



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

BARTLE'S
ENGLISH GRAMMAR.



600092954Z





A NEW GRAMMAR
OF THE
ENGLISH LANGUAGE
WITH THE
PRINCIPLES OF ANALYSIS.

EXPRESSLY DESIGNED

FOR STUDENTS PREPARING FOR THE OXFORD AND CAMBRIDGE LOCAL
EXAMINATIONS, THE CIVIL SERVICE, AND OTHER
COMPETITIVE TESTS; AND ALSO FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES,
SCHOOLS, AND PRIVATE FAMILIES.

BY THE

REV. GEORGE BARTLE, D.D., D.C.L.,

(Principal of Freshfield College, Formby, Liverpool.)

*Author of "A Synopsis of English History," "An Analysis and Exposition
of the Church Catechism," "A Treatise on Arithmetic," &c.*

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.



LONDON:

LONGMANS, GREEN, READER & DYER.

1879.

210 . 375

LIVERPOOL:

W. P. PLATT, PRINTER, 32, MOORFIELDS.

PREFACE.

THOUGH many English Grammars have already been published, yet they do not appear altogether suitable even to those for whose use they were primarily written. Hence a treatise on the subject that will supply this deficiency is still a *desideratum*. Many of the English Grammars fail to be of real service, because they are either too abstruse and philosophical, too verbose and prolix, or too meagre and childish. Such books are most injurious and prejudicial, inasmuch as they cause a waste of valuable time, and produce in the mind of the student a dislike to the science of Grammar. After using one of these philosophical productions for upwards of two years, a youth declared to me that he knew more about English Grammar before he commenced the study of the book in question. Such a statement is what might reasonably be expected.

In preparing the following work, I have made the interest of the learner paramount, and on this account I have carefully refrained from enlarging my book by the insertion of what are called "progressive exercises." Such exercises, in my judgment, fetter mental development, and prevent the student from practically applying the knowledge he has acquired. After a certain portion of the Grammar has been thoroughly mastered by the learner, passages from any book may be given to him in order to test his knowledge, and to afford scope for mental exercise. By adopting this method his progress will be threefold.

GEORGE BARTLE.

Freshfield College,

Formby-by-the-Sea, 1878.



600092954Z



and **Rules** of the two Languages are **identical**. It is quite true that some languages have a strong resemblance to each other so far as **generalities** are concerned, but in **particulars** they are found to differ just as **widely**. This being so, it is obvious that a thorough knowledge of any one Language will never enable a person to write another Language with precision whose **Rules** and **peculiarities** he has never studied. He who wishes to speak and write the English tongue with elegance and propriety must carefully study **English Grammar**, although he may have thoroughly mastered the Grammars of a dozen different Languages. Owing to the preceding erroneous notions about English Grammar, we find that many of our most eminent authors have disfigured their compositions by the most glaring grammatical inaccuracies. We have occasionally heard Classical Scholars speak of English Grammar somewhat contemptuously, and mention with apparent satisfaction to themselves the fact that they never learnt it. It may be natural for a man to esteem himself in respect of his knowledge, but one can hardly understand an individual who is proud of his ignorance.

English Grammar is divided into **Four Parts**, which will be fully explained under separate heads. They are known by the following names :—

- 1.—**Orthography.**
- 2.—**Etymology.**
- 3.—**Syntax.**
- 4.—**Prosody.**

Note.—Each of the preceding words is derived from the Greek Language. **Orthography** comes from *Orthos*, correct, and *grapho*, I write ; **Etymology**, from *Etymos*, true, and *logos*, an account ; **Syntax**, from *Syn*, together, and *taxis*, order, or arrangement ; **Prosody**, from *pros*, to, and *ode*, a song.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

Orthography is that part of Grammar by which we are taught the nature of **Letters** or **Characters**, and **Syllables**; and the way in which words ought to be **spelt**.

1.—**THE ALPHABET.**

The **Alphabet** of the English Language comprises **Twenty-six** letters, which are called **Capital** letters and **small** letters.

Small letters are : *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.*

Capital letters are : *A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z.*

Note 1.—The word **Alphabet** is derived from the first two letters of the Greek Alphabet, namely, **Alpha** and **Beta**, and is the collective name given to the Twenty-six letters.

Note 2.—It is necessary to note in this place that we have also the double letters **ae** and **oe**, that is, **a** **e** and **o** **e** imported

words borrowed from foreign languages : as, **egis**, a shield : and **œcus**, the banqueting-room of a Roman house. These double letters are pronounced in English like long **e**, as in the word **mete**.

2.—THE VOWELS.

Letters which can be **sounded by themselves** are designated **Vowels**. There are five of this description, namely, **a, e, i, o, u**.

The two Letters **w** and **y** are called **Semi-vowels** or **Half-vowels**, because they are used **both** as **vowels** and **consonants**. When they **begin** a **word**, or **syllable**, or come **before** a **vowel** they are **consonants** : as, *wine, witch, yield, yellow*. When they **terminate** a word or syllable they are **vowels** : as, *try, trying*.

Note.—The word **vowel**, Latin *vocalis*, vocal, literally means **sounding**.

3.—THE CONSONANTS.

These Letters, which cannot be articulated without the aid of vowels, are called **Consonants**.

Note.—The word **Consonant** is composed of the Latin *consonare*, to sound with, and is applied to certain letters, because they are sounded along **with vowels**.

The Consonants may be divided into the four following classes :—

- 1.—**Liquids.**
- 2.—**Mutes.**
- 3.—**Sibilants.**
- 4.—**Semi-vowels.**

The **Liquids** are, **l, m, n, r**, being so called because they unite so easily with most of the other consonants. The sound of **m**, for instance, readily combines with that of **b** or **p**: **n** with those of **d** and **t**: and **l, r**, with the sounds of many other letters.

The **Mutes** or **Dumb Letters, b, c, d, g, k, p, q, t**, are **subdivided** into three classes, called:—

- 1.—**Labials.**
- 2.—**Dentals.**
- 3.—**Gutturals.**

Note.—The **Mutes** have the preceding names given to them according to that part of the throat or mouth which is principally used in pronouncing them. Each word is derived from Latin: **as**, labial, from *labium*, a lip: **dental**, *dens*, a tooth: and **guttural**, from *guttur*, the throat. The chief **organs** of **speech** are the **Palate**, the **tongue**, and the **lips**.

The **Sibilants** or **Hissing Letters** are so called from the Latin word *sibilare*, which means to hiss. They are, **s, (sh), x, z**. Some Grammarians class **ch** and **j** among the hissing letters, because they have a **sibilant** sound, but as the palate is chiefly used in pronouncing them, they are with, perhaps, greater propriety called **Palatals**, from the Latin *palatum*, palate.

The Letters **f, l, m, n, r, s, v, x, z**, and **c** and **g soft**, are also called **Semi-vowels**.

H is a peculiar letter, inasmuch as it is, strictly speaking, neither a vowel nor a consonant. It is sounded *by breathing* forcibly in the act of pronouncing the vowel *with which it is connected*: as *hale*, *heart*. Owing to the *way in which the h is sounded* it is often called

Aspirate, from the Latin word *Aspirare*, which signifies "to breathe upon."

Silent H.

Every word in the English language beginning with **h** must have the **h** sounded, except in the following:—*Herb, herbage, heir, heiress, honest, honesty, dishonest, honour, hotel, honourable, honourably, hospital, hostler, hour, hourly, humour, humorist, humorous, humorously, humoursome, and humble.*

Note 1.—There is some difference of opinion as to how the common word **humble** should be pronounced, and anyone writing upon a grammatical subject ought to notice it. Ought the **h** to be sounded or to remain silent? Taking into consideration that the word *humble* intrinsically conveys the notion of humiliation, and bearing in mind that the most elegant and accomplished speakers almost invariably pronounce the word without sounding the **h**, we must regard the latter mode of pronunciation as preferable.

Note 2.—The pronunciation of the word **Hotel** is not fixed. Some prefer to **sound** the **h** and others to keep it **silent**. The question may be settled by an appeal to common sense. It should be borne in mind that the word before us takes the accent on the **second syllable**, and therefore the **aspirate** on the **first syllable** cannot be pronounced without giving a certain amount of trouble or inconvenience to the speaker. Under these circumstances such trouble and inconvenience may be avoided by permitting the **h** to remain **silent**.

H was formerly a **guttural**, and it is still so sounded in Scotland, and in some of the northern parts of England.

The sound of **wh** is equal to **hoo**. Thus the word *when*, is pronounced as if written **hoo-en**.

Note.—Words beginning with **wh**, such as *why, what, wherefore*, are often pronounced improperly, by omitting the **aspirate**. Hence we not unfrequently hear **what** pronounced as if written

vat. This blemish should be avoided by those who aspire to accuracy in the pronunciation of the English Language.

Th has **two** distinct **sounds**, which may be observed in the words *then* and *thin*. In the former word the **th** is called **flat**, and in the latter **sharp**.

Q is a superfluous letter, and is invariably followed by **u**.

4.—**DIPHTHONGS.**

Two vowels united form what is called a **Diphthong**: as, **oa** in the words *moan*, *boat*. Diphthongs may be either proper or improper.

A **Proper Diphthong** is the **united** sound of **two** vowels in one syllable: as, *boy*, *aye*, *row*. The real diphthongs are **ay**, **ow**, **oy**, **oi** and **ou**. An **improper Diphthong** is that in which only **one** of the vowels is sounded: as, **oa** in *coat*, *goat*.

A **Triphthong** is three vowels united: as, **eau** in *beautiful*.

Note.—**Diphthong** comes from the Greek *dis*, *double*, and *phthoggos*, *sound*; while the word **Triphthong** is derived from the same Greek source, namely, *treis*, *three*, and *phthoggos*, *sound*.

5.—**SYLLABICATION.**

A **Syllable** is that portion of a word which has only one vowel sound, or so much as can be pronounced at once: as, **far**, in *farmer*; **gro**, in *grocer*.

A **Monosyllable** is a word consisting of only **one syllable** : as, *dog, time*.

A **Dissyllable** is a word comprising **two syllables** : as, *truth-ful*.

A **Trisyllable** is a word comprising **three syllables** : as, *va-ni-ty*.

A **Polysyllable** is applied to a word of **four or many syllables** : as, *pe-cu-li-ar, Con-stan-ti-no-po-li-tan*.

Note.—The term **Syllable** is from the Greek *syn, together*, and *lab*, the root of *lambano*, to take ; hence it signifies a *taking together*. Monosyllable is from the Greek *monos, single*, and *syllabe, syllable*. Dissyllable from *dis, twofold*, and *syllabe, syllable*. Trisyllable from *Treis, three*, and *syllabe, syllable*. Polysyllable from the Greek *Polys, many*, and *syllabe, syllable*.

In **dividing** a word into its **component parts**, or breaking it up into **syllables**, the following Rules must receive attention :—

- 1.—Words of only **one syllable** should **not** be divided.
- 2.—When practicable the division should be made after the **vowel**, so that the next syllable may commence with a consonant : as, *stu-pid, pro-vi-sion*.
- 3.—**Two vowels** coming together, and not forming a diphthong, must be divided : as, *so-ci-e-ty*.
- 4.—**Two consonants** coming together between **two vowels** must be divided : as, *tur-nip*. Should both the consonants be necessary to complete the following syllables, they must not be separated : as, *sta-ble*.
- 5.—**Affixes, Prefixes**, and grammatical terminations, such as **ex, est**, make separate syllables : as, *mis-doer, father-less, contermin-ate, mov-er, mov-est*.

Note.—In the division of words into syllables, due regard *must be paid* to the Etymology or derivation of the words : thus,

it would not be proper to write *assis-tance*, but **assist-ance** : not *res-train*, but **re-strain**.

6.—The Modification of Words as regards the Spelling.

In order to **spell** words correctly the following **Rules** must be **observed** :—

- 1.—Words which end in **y** with a consonant before it change the **y** into **i** when an extra syllable is added : as, *envy*, *envious* ; *happy*, *happiness*.
- 2.—The **y** must not be changed before **ing**, **ish** and **'s** indicating the sign of the possessive case : as, *plying*, *babyish*, for *purity's* sake. The **y** is also retained in the following words : *Shyness*, *dryness*, and *slyly*. On the other hand, words ending in **ie**, and having the termination **ing** added to them, drop the **e** and change the **i** into **y** : as, *die*, *dying*.
- 3.—**Silent** or **mute e** at the **end** of a word is **omitted** when the additional syllable begins with a **vowel** : as, *move*, *moving* ; *stone*, *stony*.
- 4.—Should the **mute e** follow **c** or **g** **soft**, it is generally retained before **able** and **ous** : as, *charge*, *chargeable* ; *courage*, *courageous*.
- 5.—When the syllable added begins with a **consonant** the **e** is **retained** : as, *whole*, *wholesome* ; but coming before **fy** and **ty** it is changed into **i** : as, *active*, *activity* ; *pure*, *purify*.

Note.—The **e** is **omitted** in the following words : *Avé*, *awful* ; *acknowledge*, *acknowledgment* ; *abridge*, *abridgment* ; *judge*, *judgment* ; *due*, *duly* ; *true*, *truly* ; *whole*, *wholly*.

- 6.—When **y** succeeds a vowel it must **not** be changed : as, *attorney*, *attorneys* ; *boy*, *boyish*.

Note.—This rule is unfortunately not without its exceptions, of which the following may be regarded as the principal : *Day*,

daily ; lay, laid ; pay, paid ; say, said ; gay, gaiety ; stay, staid ; array, raiment.

- 7.—The **only** consonants that are doubled at the end of words are **f, l, and s** : as, *chaff, childless, full.*

Note.—We must note the exceptions to this rule, which are the following : *Add, ebb, egg, inn, err, dorr, buzz, odd, butt, yarr, parr, purr, fuzz, and fizz.*

- 8.—Those words which terminate in **Double Letters**, excepting **ll**, and followed by **ful, ness, and less**, retain the **double letters** : as in the words *carelessness, successful, stiffly.*

- 9.—Words ending in **ll** lose one **l** on being compounded with other words : as, *all, altogether ; till, until ; will, wilful.*

Note.—The exceptions to this rule are, *tallness, stillness, illness, shrillness, and smallness.*

- 10.—Words consisting of more than **one** syllable do not end in **ll**.
To this rule there are three exceptions, namely, *uphill, refill, recall.*

Note.—The word **recall** is often spelt with only **one l**, and the mode of using one *l* instead of two is more consistent with the general rule, and therefore it ought to be followed in practice.

- 11.—Words consisting of **one** syllable, and words taking the **accent** or stress on the **last syllable**, and terminating in a **single** consonant with a **single** vowel before it, require the final consonant to be doubled prior to the addition of another syllable that begins with a vowel : as, *rob, robbed, robbing ; trap, trapping, trapped ; compel, compelled ; trapan, trapanned, trapanner.*

- 12.—Unless the **accent** is on the **last** syllable the final consonant is **not** doubled : as, *offer, offered ; limit, limited.*

Note.—This rule has many exceptions which custom has sanctioned. These words mostly end in **l** with a vowel before it :

as, jewel, jeweller; travel, travelling, traveller; duel, duellist. When the addition to the word causes the accent to be placed on a **preceding syllable** the final letter is not doubled: *as, refer, reference.* Here it is to be observed that the stress is on *fer* in *refer*, but it is on *re* in *reference*. The accent being thrown on the **former portion** of the word prevents the doubling of the *r*.

7.—CAPITAL LETTERS.

The pronoun **I** and the interjection **O!** must be written in **capitals**.

Common nouns, when **personified**: *as, Come, gentle Spring.*

The words *thou, thine, thee, him, he, and his*, should be written in **capitals** when they refer to the **Deity**.

The **first word** of every book, or any other piece of **writing**, must begin with a **capital** letter.

Proper names: that is, the names of places, persons, ships, &c.

The names of the **arts** and **sciences** and their chief terms are mostly written in **capitals**: *as, Theology, Astronomy, Subjunctive.*

The **first word** after a full stop or the beginning of a **new sentence** should commence with a capital.

The **answer** to a **question** should begin with a capital.

The **first word** of every line in **poetry**.

The **appellations** of the **Deity**: as, *God, Omnipotent, Eternal.*

Adjectives derived from the proper names of places : as, *Grecian, Roman, English.*

The **first word** of a quotation, introduced after a colon : as, *Always remember this ancient maxim : " Know thyself."*

The names of **days, weeks, and months** ought to be written in **capitals**: as, *Friday, August, Easter-week.*

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

Etymology treats of the different sorts of words, shows how they are derived, and explains the nature of their inflexion, or the changes which they undergo.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The **words** of the English Language are divided into **Eight Classes**, called **Parts of Speech**. They are :—

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. The Noun. | 5. The Adverb. |
| 2. The Adjective. | 6. The Preposition. |
| 3. The Pronoun. | 7. The Conjunction. |
| 4. The Verb. | 8. The Interjection. |

Note.—It is necessary to observe in this place that the **parts of speech** were formerly reckoned **nine** in number, but now they are considered as **only eight**. This change arises from the fact that the articles **a** and **the** are now classified with the adjectives, and this classification, it must be admitted, is based upon sound philosophical principles. The articles **a** or **an** and **the** certainly exercise an influence upon the nouns before which they are put, and this being so they ought to be placed in the same rank as adjectives.

THE NOUN.

A Noun is the name of anything that can be conceived to have an independent existence : as, *man, house, virtue.*

Note.—A **Noun** may be readily distinguished from the other parts of speech by attending to the following simple rule : All words that make sense with the expression, **I speak of,** are nouns : as, *I speak of time, an angel, blackness, virtue.*

Nouns are divided into two classes, known as :—

- 1.—**Proper Nouns.**
- 2.—**Common Nouns.**

I.—**Proper Nouns** are those which **denote** only **one of a kind** : as, *London, George, England, Thames ;* or names of ships, such as, *Great Eastern, City of Glasgow.*

Note 1.—The word **Noun** signifies **name**, and comes from the Latin *nomen*. The word **proper** is derived from the Latin *proprius*, and means **peculiar** or **one's own**. A **Proper Name**, therefore, strictly denotes a **person's own name**, or the name **peculiar** to the **individual** that bears it.

Note 2.—A **Proper Name** is **not** limited in its application to any single person or individual thing. On the contrary, the same proper name is often given to a great **many individuals**. There are, for instance, many Johns, any number of Williams, and Georges in abundance, and yet every John, every William, and every George is a proper noun ; because each of the three names refers to only **one** individual separately considered, and does not include all the objects of the same **kind**.

Note 3.—A **group** or class is frequently denoted by **proper names** : as, *the Johnsons, the Dixons, the Cromptons.*

II.—A **Common Noun** is that which denotes a whole kind : as, *water, city, man, dog, house.*

Note 1.—A noun is said to be **common**, because the name so given is common to **all** the **individuals** contained in the class. The term *city*, for example, is not confined in its application to one place in particular; but denotes any city, as, *City of London, City of Paris, City of Chester*.

Note 2.—**Common Nouns** are also called **appellatives**, from the Latin *appellare*; *to call*, because they are the names by which external objects are designated.

Common Nouns are divided into the three following classes :—

I.—**Collective Nouns** which are so called, because they represent a number of persons or things as if only one : thus, *army, mob, herd, parliament*.

II.—**Abstract Nouns** which are so designated, because they denote **qualities** or **attributes**. There are several kinds of Abstract Nouns, as indicated below :—

- 1.—Those which are applied to the **arts** and **sciences** :
as, *Sculpture, Astronomy*.
- 2.—The **names of qualities** : as, *foolishness, wisdom, whiteness*.
- 3.—**Names of actions** : as, *reading, step, punishment*.
- 4.—**Names of conditions of things** : as, *friendship, life, eternity, widowhood*.
- 5.—**Names of powers and mental passions** :
as, *memory, jealousy*.

III.—**The names of materials** : as, *gold, wood, silver*.

Note.—The term **abstract** comes from the Latin *abstractus*, *drawn from*, and signifies that the state or quality is considered apart from an object.

To **Nouns** belong **Gender**, **Number**, and **Case**.

I.—**GENDER**.

Gender denotes the distinction of the **Sexes**.

Accurately speaking, there are only **Two Genders**, the **Masculine** and the **Feminine**.

The **Masculine Gender** denotes the **Male Sex**: as, *man*, *bull*.

The **Feminine Gender** denotes the **Female Sex**: as, *woman*, *cow*.

The **Names** of things **without life** have **no gender**, and on that account are called **Neuter Nouns**: as, *milk*, *wood*, *ink*.

Note 1.—The word **neuter** is from the Latin *neuter*, *neither of the two*, and signifies that the noun to which it refers is neither of the masculine nor feminine gender.

Note 2.—The term **gender** is of Latin origin, being derived from *genus*, a *kind* or *sort*.

Note 3.—The words **gender** and **sex** are not identical in signification. The former denotes the **verbal**, and the latter the **natural distinction** between the **male** and the **female**.

Inanimate things are often represented as if they were **persons**, and are therefore spoken of as *being* **Masculine** or **Feminine**: thus, "The **sun** *was invisible yesterday*; but **he** is very bright to-day."

"A short time ago the **moon** was horned, but now **she** is gibbous." "Though the **Church of England** has many enemies: yet **she** is the most Scriptural Church on the face of the earth." We speak of *religion*, *virtue*, and the *earth* as Feminine, while *Death* and *Time* are considered as Masculine.

Nouns which can be applied both to the **Male** and the **Female** are called **Nouns** of the **Common Gender**: as, *parent*, *enemy*, *sovereign*.

Note.—The word **parent** denotes either **father** or **mother**, and being as applicable to the one as to the other, we say it is a **noun** of the **common gender**.

In the English Language there are **three** methods of **distinguishing** the **sexes**.

1.—By Different Words.

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Bachelor	Maid, Spinster.	Father	Mother
Beau	Belle	Friar	Nun
Boar	Sow	Gander	Goose
Boy	Girl	Hart	Roe
Bridegroom	Bride	Horse, Stallion.	Mare
Brother	Sister	Husband	Wife
Buck	Doe	King	Queen
Bull	Cow	Lad	Lass
Bullock or Steer }	Heifer	Lord	Lady
Cook	Hen	Man	Woman, Maid
Colt	Filly	Master	Mistress
Dog	Bitch	Militer	Spawner
Drake	Duck	Monk,	Nun
Drone	Bee	Monsieur	{ Madame Mademoiselle
Earl	Countess	Nephew	
			Niece

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Papa	Mamma	Son	Daughter
Ram	Ewe	Sloven	Slut
Singer	{ Songstress or Singer	Stag	Hind
Sir	Madam	Uncle	Aunt
Sire	Dam	Wizard	Witch

Note 1.—Some of the words in the preceding list have a **common** form. For instance, the common form of **boar** and **sow** is *hog*, *swine*, *pig*. **Fowl** is common to *cock* and *hen*; so **child** to *son* and *daughter*.

Note 2.—The word *bridegroom* is from the Anglo-Saxon *brydguma*, from *guma*, a man, and literally means the **Bride's man**. *Friar*, French *frère* and Latin *frater*, signifies a **brother** or member of some religious orders in the Roman Catholic Church.

2.—By a change in the termination: as—

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Abbot	Abbess	Enchanter	Enchantress
Actor	Actress	Executor	Executrix
Administrator	Administratrix	Founder	Foundress
Adulterer	Adulteress	Giant	Giantess
Ambassador	Ambadress	God	Goddess
Arbiter	Arbitress	Governor	Governess
Author	Authoress	Heir	Heiress
Baron	Baroness	Hero	Heroine
Benefactor	Benefactress	Host	Hostess
Canon	Canoness	Hunter	Huntress
Caterer	Cateress	Instructor	Instructress
Chanter	Chantress	Inventor	Inventress
Conductor	Conductress	Jew	Jewess
Count	Countess	Lion	Lioness
Czar	Czarina	Landgrave	Landgravine
Deacon	Deaconess	Marquis	Marchioness
Director	Directress	Master	Mistress
Duke	Duchess	Mayor	Mayoress
Elector	Electress	Monitor	Monitress
Emperor	Empress	Murderer	Murderess

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Negro	Negress	Shepherd	Shepherdess
Patron	Patroness	Songster	Songstress
Peer	Peeress	Sorcerer	Sorceress
Poet	Poetess	Sultan	{ Sultaness or
Preceptor	Preceptress		{ Sultana
Priest	Priestess	Tailor	Tailoress
Prince	Princess	Testator	Testatrix
Prior	Prioress	Tiger	Tigress
Prophet	Prophetess	Traitor	Traitress
Proprietor	Proprietress	Tutor	Tutoress
Protector	Protectress	Viscount	Viscountess
Rector	Rectress	Votary	Votaress
Seamster	Seamstress	Widower	Widow

Note.—In the list of words given above, it will be observed that the Feminine Gender is distinguished from the Masculine by the terminations **ess**, **ine**, and **trix**: as, *abbot*, *abbess*; *hero*, *heroine*; *executor*, *executrix*. The word *vixen* is the feminine of *fox*. We must here note the following words: the Spanish *Don* which makes *donna* in the feminine gender; also the two Italian words, *infante*, *infanta*; *signor*, *signora*.

3.—**By Prefixing words which show the different genders:** as, *man-servant*, *maid-servant*, *male-child*, *he-goat*, *she-goat*, *cock-sparrow*, *hen-sparrow*, *bull-calf*, *cow-calf*.

II.—NUMBER.

Nouns have **Two Numbers**; the **Singular**, which signifies **one**: as, *book*; and the **Plural**, which signifies **more than one**: as, *books*.

The Formation of the Plural.

1.—**Nouns** are generally **pluralised** by adding **s** to the **singular**: as, *work*, *works*.

2.—Nouns ending in **s**, **sh**, **ch** (soft), **x**, **z**, and **o**, when the **o** is preceded by a **consonant**, require **es** to make them **plural**: as, *miss*, *misses*; *church*, *churches*; *box*, *boxes*; *potato*, *potatoes*; *waltz*, *waltzes*.

Note.—When **ch** has the sound of **k** the **plural** is formed by adding **s only**: as, *monarch*, *monarchs*. Nouns in **io**, including the following, take **s only** in the **plural**: as, *folio*, *folios*, *canto*, *cento*, *domino*, *duodecimo*, *embryo*, *grotto*, *junto*, *octavo*, *portico*, *quarto*, *rondo*, *solo*, *tyro*, and *virtuoso* which makes *virtuosos*, or *virtuosi*.

3.—**Nouns** ending in **y** form the **plural** by changing **y** into **i**, and adding **es**: as, *baby*, *babies*. When the final **y** has a vowel before it, the **plural** is formed by simply adding **s** to the **singular**: as, *day*, *days*; *boy*, *boys*; *attorney*, *attorneys*.

Note.—Nouns terminating in **y**, formerly ended in **ie**, which will account for the **plural** ending in **ies**.

4.—**Nouns** terminating in **f**, **fe**, or **lf**, form the **plural** by changing **f** into **v**, and adding **es**: as, *loaf*, *loaves*; *wife*, *wives*; *wolf*, *wolves*.

5.—**Nouns** in **ff**, **oof**, **ief**, **rf**, conform to the general rule, and take **s only**: as, *cliff*, *cliffs*; *hoof*, *hoofs*; *brief*, *briefs*; *dwarf*, *dwarfs*.

Note.—We must here note the following exceptions: *staff*, which makes *staves*; *thief*, *thieves*; *fife*, *fifes*; and according to some grammarians *mastiff* becomes *mastives* in the **plural**.

1.—**Nouns whose Plurals are formed irregularly**:—These Plurals are formed by **en** or by changing the **vowel**.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Man	Men	Cousin-German	Cousins-German
Woman	Women	Goose	Geese
Child	Children	Mouse	Mice
Foot	Feet	Louse	Lice
Ox	Oxen	Aid-de-Camp	Aids-de-Camp
Sow or Swine	Sows or Swine	Court-Martial	Courts-Martial
Tooth	Teeth	Father-in-law	Fathers-in-law.

Note.—The plural of many words formerly ended in **en**: as, **housen** for *houses*. **Kine** is evidently a contraction of *cow-en*; and **swine** is another form for *sow-en*. **Hosen** is used in the Bible as the plural of *Hose*. Some nouns also had their plurals in **ren**: the only instance of this formation of the plural is the word *children*.

2.—**Some Nouns are the same in both Numbers**:—As, *congeries*, *corps* (of soldiers), *cannon*, *couple*; *deer*; *grouse*; *head*, *heathen*, *horse* (soldiers), *hose*; *foot* (soldiers); *mackerel*; *pair*; *salmon*, *series*, *sheep*, *species*, *swine*; *teal*, *trout*; *yoke*. In such nouns the **Singular** is distinguished from the **Plural** by using **a** or **one** before the noun: as, *a deer*, *a trout*.

3.—**A few Nouns have a double plural**; but they are mostly used in different senses: as—

Brother: *brothers*, denoting children of the same parents; *brethren*, members of a congregation or society.

Die: *Dice* is applied to *gaming*, and *Dies* to *stamping* or *coining*.

Penny: *Pence* simply denotes a sum of money; *Pennies*, the coins called *penny-pieces*.

Index: *Indices* in algebraic quantities, and *index* of a book makes *indexes*.

Genius: *Geniuses* denote persons of great *abilities*, or intellectual power; *Genii*, spirits.

Pea: *Peas* is used for separate seeds, and *pease*, for a quantity.

Fish: *Fish* stands for the race of *fishes*; while *fishes* signify number.

Cloth: *Cloths* denote the various sorts of cloth; *clothes*, garments or dress.

4.—**Nouns used only in the plural.** Such are: *aborigines*, *agenda* (things to be done), *Alps*, *amends*, *annals*, *antipodes*, *archives*, *arms*, *ashes*, *assets*; *banns*, *bellows*, *belles lettres*, *billiards*, *bowels*, *breeches*; *calends*, *cattle*, *clothes*, *Commons* (House of), *compasses*, *credentials*, *cresses*, *customs*; *downs*, *draughts*, *drawers*, *dregs*, *dumps*; *embers*, *entrails*; *fetters*, *filings*, *fives*, *forceps*; *glanders*, *goods*; *hustings*, *hysterics*; *Ides*; *landes* (sandy plains), *lees*, *letters* (learning), *literati*; *mallows*, *manners*, *measles*, *minutiae*, *molasses*, *morals*, *mumps*; *nippers*, *nones*, *nuptials*; *oats*, *obsequies*, *odds*, *orgies*; *pantaloon*, *pincers*, *pliers*, *premises*, *proceeds* (of a sale); *reins*; *scissors*, *sessions*, *shambles*, *shears*, *snuffers*, *spectacles*, *statistics*, *suds*, *sweepstakes*; *tactics*, *thanks*, *tongs*, *trappings*, *trousers*, *tweezers*; *Vespers*, *victuals*, *vitals*.

Note.—As there is some doubt as to whether the following nouns are **singular** or **plural**, we shall endeavour to remove the uncertainty by devoting special attention to each :—

Alms is strictly **singular**, but custom has made it **plural**. It may, therefore, be used in **both** numbers.

Amends is decidedly **plural**, but now almost exclusively employed in the **singular** number.

Eaves is generally used as a **plural**, although its derivation shows it to have been a **singular** noun.

Folk stands for a noun of multitude; but in giving expression to *persons* of some particular characteristics, we use the **Plural**: *as, kind folks, merry folks*.

Means is both **singular** and **plural**. **Mean** is now chiefly used to denote the middle point of two extremes.

News was formerly used in the **plural**, but now invariably in the **singular**.

Pains is mostly **plural**; but we also find it used in the **singular**.

Public, being a **noun** of **multitude** and conveying, as it does, a **plurality** of **notion**, should be followed by a **plural verb**: as, *The Public are informed*; and not, *the Public is informed*.

Riches are now considered **plural**, though really **singular**, as is evident by its derivation from the French *richesse*.

Summons is regarded as a **plural**; but since we have *summonses* for the **plural**, it certainly ought to be considered as a **singular noun**.

Tidings is **plural**, though used by Shakspeare in both numbers.

Wages is the **plural** of **wage**; but is used as a **noun singular**, especially in the Bible: as, "The wages of sin is death." Romans vi. 23.

5.—**Abstract Nouns have no plurals**, unless they point to certain particular **varieties** of the **quality**: as, *might, wisdom, whiteness, virtues, vices, negligences*.

6.—**The Names of Materials have no plural**: as, *silver, gold, air*. When, however, the different **sorts** or **qualities** of the **material** are meant, then the **plural is used**: as, *wines, cigars, sugars, teas*.

Note.—Though such words as *mechanics, pneumatics, hydrostatics*, are really **plural**; yet they are mostly considered as **singular**. They are scientific terms derived from the Greek. In

some instances, however, they are used in the plural: as, *politics*: *Aristotle's Ethics are valued*.

7.—Nouns which form their plurals according to the Rules of the Languages from which they are borrowed:—

1.—Latin Words.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Addendum	Addenda	Formula	Formulæ
Alumnus	Alumni	Fungus	Fungi
Animalculum	Animalcula	Genus	Genera
Amanuensis	Amanuenses	Hiatus	Hiatus
Apex	Apices	Ignis Fatuus	Ignes Fatui
Appendix	Appendices	Lamina	Laminæ
Arcanum	Arcana	Larva	Larvæ
Axis	Axes	Locus	Loci
Calculus	Calculi	Magus	Magi
Calx	Calces	Nebula	Nebulæ
Calix	Calices	Radius	Radii
Corrigendum	Corrigenda	Radix	Radices
Datum	Data	Stamen	Stamina
Desideratum	Desiderata	Stimulus	Stimuli
Dictum	Dicta	Stratum	Strata
Effluvium	Effluvia	Terminus	Termini
Emporium	Emporia	Vertex	Vertices
Erratum	Errata	Vortex	Vortices
Focus	Foci		

2.—Greek Words.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Analysis	Analyses	Ellipsis	Ellipses
Antithesis	Antitheses	Hypothesis	Hypotheses
Automaton	Automata	Metamorphosis	Metamorphoses
Basis	Bases	Miasma	Miasmata
Crisis	Crises	Oasis	Oases
<i>Parenthesis</i>	<i>Parentheses</i>	Phasis	Phases
<i>Phenomenon</i>	<i>Phenomena</i>		

3.—Hebrew Words.

Singular.

Cherub

Seraph

Plural.

Cherubim

Seraphim

4.—French Words.

Singular.

Beau

Bureau

Flambeau

Plural.

Beaux

Bureaux

Flambeaux

Singular.

Monsieur

Savant

Plural.

Messieurs

Savans

5.—Italian Words.

Singular.

Bandit

Conversazione

Dilettante

Plural.

Banditti

Conversazioni

Dilettanti

Note 1.—The following words, borrowed from foreign languages, have a **double plural**:—**Encomium**, which makes *encomia* and *encomiums*; **medium**, *media* and *mediums*; **vivarium**, *vivaria* and *vivariums*; **memorandum**, *memoranda* and *memorandums*; **formula** makes *formulæ* and *formulas*. The two Greek words **criterion** and **dogma** have likewise a **Greek** and an **English plural**: as, *criteria* and *criteria*s; *dogmata*, or *dogmas*. The Hebrew **cherub** and **seraph** are in the same predicament. The **Hebrew plural** is formed by adding **im**: as, *cherub*, *cherubim*; *seraph*, *seraphim*. These words, however, have also an **English plural**: as, *seraphs*, *cherubs*. So the Italian word **bandit** is *bandits* and *banditti*.

Note 2.—One is so accustomed to hear some of the foregoing words pronounced with an English plural, that their proper plural does not sound upon the ear so euphoniously. Though **dogmata** is the correct plural of *dogma*, yet in calling it *dogmata*, instead of *dogmas*, there is an appearance of pedantry which most people would wish to avoid.

III.—CASE.

Case is applied to the **variation** of **Nouns** and **Pronouns**, and indicates the **relation** they bear to **other words** in the same sentence.

There are **Four Cases**: the **Nominative**, **Possessive**, **Objective**, and **Vocative**.

The **subject** of the **Verb** is the **Nominative Case**, which denotes the **name** of the **person** or **thing** that **acts**: as, *John writes*; *birds sing*.

Note 1.—When the **Nominative** stands before a **participle**, and is independent of the rest of the sentence, it is called the **Nominative Absolute**: as, *I being poor, he forsook me*.

Note 2.—The **Nominative Case** was anciently called *casus rectus*, or the **upright case**, which the Greek grammarians indicated by a **perpendicular line**. The **other cases** were represented by **additional lines** which inclined to the perpendicular one at **certain angles**, and on that account were denominated the **oblique cases**. The repeating of these different **forms** or **changes** of the **Noun** was, for the same reason, called **declension**. The word **Nominative** comes from the Latin *nominare*, to name; and **Case** from the Latin *cado* (*casus*), which means to fall.

The **Possessive Case** of the **Noun** is used to denote **possession** or **ownership**: as, *John's* property; *Joseph's* book.

Note.—Wishing to show that a certain property belongs to **John**, and a certain book to **Joseph**, we point out their respective claims by putting **both** in the **Possessive Case**. The **Noun** in the **Possessive Case** is said to be in the **attributive relation** to that which is **possessed**. Thus, the noun **John's** is in the **attributive relation** to the word **property**. The noun **Joseph's** also stands in the **attributive relation** to the word **book**.

Rules for the Formation of the Possessive Case :—

- 1.—The **Possessive Singular** and the **Possessive Plural**, when it does not end in **s**, are formed from the **Nominative** by adding an **apostrophe** and **s** ('s): as, *man*, *man's*; *men*, *men's*.

- 2.—When the **Plural** ends in **s**, the **Possessive** is formed by simply adding an **apostrophe**: as, *eagles' wings*.
- 3.—The **Possessive** can generally be changed into the **Objective Case** preceded by the preposition **of**, and retain the same sense; thus, *my brother's children*, may be expressed in this manner: *The children of my brother*. This latter mode of expression is often preferable. For example, it is more elegant to say, *the House of Lords*, than *the Lords' House*.

Note 1.—When a **Singular Noun** ends in **es**, pronounced as a distinct syllable, the **apostrophe only** is retained: as, *Moses' writings*. When the **es** is not sounded as a distinct syllable, the **s**, as well as the **apostrophe**, must be added: as, *St. James's Church*. It would be incorrect to say, *St. James' Church*, because the **e** in *James* is **not sounded**.

Note 2.—**Singular Nouns** ending in **ce**, **x**, **ss**, and **us**, often form the possessive by merely adding the **apostrophe**. This is specially the case when the word **sake** is used. Thus we say, *for goodness' sake*; *for conscience' sake*; *Felix' palace*; *Brutus' statue*; but we say, *the Duchess's rooms*; *the Princess's apartments*.

Note 3.—The **Possessive Case** is also called the **Genitive**; and the **Objective**, the **Accusative**.

Note 4.—The **Anglo-Saxon Possessive** ended in **es**: as, *word, wordes*. The use of the apostrophe is, therefore, to show that the vowel **e** has been left out. Though the vowel **e** is not written in words ending in **s**, yet it is **pronounced**: as, *James's book*. There once existed an erroneous impression that the **'s** of the **Possessive Case** was a contraction of *his*. Hence we have these forms for the genitive case: "*James his book*;" and, "*Christ his sake*." **English Nouns** have **only one case** formed by **inflection**, and that is the **Possessive**. The word **inflection** is from the Latin *inflectere*, which signifies to bend; the noun being *bent* into a form to express a different relation to some other word or words in the same sentence.

The **Objective Case** is that which is directly acted upon by a **Verb**, or by a **Preposition**: as, *Peter struck John*; *he went to London*.

Note.—When a **Noun**, as the representative of a person or thing, **acts** or **does** anything, we call it the **agent**; when it is **acted upon**, or something **done to it**, we denominate it the **object**: as, "*James strikes the horse.*" In this sentence **James** is the **agent**, because he does something. What does he do? He strikes the horse. Again, the noun **horse** is the **object**, because something is **done to it**. In the following example the **object** becomes the **agent**, and the **agent** becomes the **object**: as, "*The horse kicked James.*" The **agent** or **Nominative** mostly comes **before** the **Verb**, and the **Objective** **after it**. The **Nominative** and **Objective** cases are **identical in form**, and can only be distinguished by their different positions in a sentence.

The **Vocative Case** is used in **speaking to**, and denotes the **person addressed**: as, "*Son, thou art ever with me.*" Here the word *son* is spoken *to*, and consequently is in the **Vocative Case**.

Note.—The **Vocative Case** is also called the **Nominative of address**.

Declension of Regular Nouns.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	Boy	Boys
Possessive	Boy's	Boys'
Objective	Boy	Boys

Declension of Irregular Nouns.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	Man	Men
Possessive	Man's	Men's
Objective	Man	Men

ADJECTIVES.

An **Adjective** is a word used to qualify a **Noun** by limiting the application of it, or by indicating its properties or qualities: as, *ten books*; *learned men*.

Note 1.—In the first example, the qualification consists in limiting the number of books to ten; in the second, a certain quality of the Noun, *men*, is pointed out by the Adjective *learned*, indicating that the men in question possess *learning*. The leading effect of the Adjective upon the Noun is that of limitation. To this rule there is no exception. Another effect of the Adjective upon the Noun is, to intensify or increase its meaning. Let us illustrate this by the example already given. The epithet, *learned*, limits the noun, *men*, to that particular class of persons who are noted for their attainments, and it also qualifies the Noun, *men*, by distinguishing them from other men that are ignorant or unlearned. This attribute, *learned*, also augments the meaning of the noun, *men*, by crediting them with the possession of knowledge which is not common to men in general. Again, *learned* men are less numerous than *men*; more *learned* men are fewer in number than *learned* men; while the most *learned* men are fewer still. Hence, the higher the qualification goes, the more does the noun become intensified in signification, and the greater is the limitation.

Note 2.—The learner should be careful to distinguish between the name of a thing and the thing itself. When it is said that an Adjective expresses the quality of a noun, the meaning is, that it expresses the quality of the person or thing represented by the noun. Suppose we say, a *mad* dog, the adjective *mad* tells us the sort of dog that is meant, and not what sort of a noun the word *dog* is.

Note 3.—The word Adjective is derived from the Latin *Adjectus*, and signifies *added to*, and it always refers to a Noun expressed or understood. An Adjective qualifies no part of speech, except a noun, neither can it be the subject of a sentence, nor be governed by a Preposition. When a sentence does begin with an Adjective, it is in consequence of the order of the words being inverted: as, "*Terrible was the account of the shipwreck*," that is, "*the account of the shipwreck was terrible*." The Adjective may always be known by its making sense with the word thing: as, a good thing.

Note 4.—There are cases in which some of the preceding remarks might seem to be contradictory, but such is not so in reality. For instance, when we say, "*a little is better than none*," the adjective *little* refers to some noun previously mentioned: as, "*a little (money) is better than none*." Again, we say, "*black is not white*." We here use the terms, *black* and *white*, for the abstract nouns, *blackness* and *whiteness*.

Adjectives are divided into the three following classes :—

I.—Adjectives of quality : *as, good, little, thin, English, great.*

Note.—**Adjectives of this class** are very numerous, and answer the question, **what sort?** The Latin *Qualis*, of *what sort?* is the root of *qualitas*, from which comes our English word *quality*. Adjectives derived from proper names are mostly **Adjectives of Quality**, and are called **Proper Adjectives**: *as, French soldier ; Turkish ambassador.*

II.—Adjectives of quantity, which are characterised by their indefiniteness, and answer the question, **How many?** or **How much?** *as, ten books, much corn.*

Adjectives of quantity are subdivided into four kinds :—

1.—Adjectives which denote quantity in mass or bulk : *as, little food ; much bread.* The adjectives of this kind are : *all, any, enough, little, much, no, none, some, whole.*

Note.—When **Adjectives of quantity** refer to **distinct individuals or things**, as a *tall tree*, a *little house*, they are **Adjectives of Quality**. Sometimes these words : *all, no, none, some, whole, any*, and *enough* are used as **Adjectives of Number**, and may be known by answering to the question, **How many?** There are also instances in which *any, enough, some, all*, and *no* appear to be used as **Adverbs** : *as, "She could not run any faster ;" "The child could arrive no sooner."*

2.—Definite numeral adjectives, which express an **exact number** : *as, five oranges.* These numbers are either **Cardinal** or **Ordinal**.

1. Cardinal numbers denote **how many** : *as, one, three, sixty, both, none.*

2. **Ordinal numbers** show the **order** in which things are **placed**: as, *first, fifth, tenth*.

3.—**Indefinite numeral adjectives**, which do **not** indicate an **exact number**: as, *any men*. Under this class come: *all, any, some, many, another, few, other, certain, divers, enough, several, whole, such, and sundry*.

4.—**Distributive numeral adjectives**, which specify objects **individually**: as, *every day*. The principal distributive numeral adjectives are: *each, every, either, neither*. **Many**, though plural in signification, is used with **a** or **an** as a **distributive numeral adjective**: as, *many an apple; many a man*.

III.—**Distinguishing adjectives**, or **adjectives of distinction**, which are so called because they separate an individual from its class: as, *this book; not that book*. The **adjectives of distinction** are: *a or an, the, this, these, that, those, yond, yon, yonder, and same*, with its compound *self-same*.

Note 1.—The Latin *quantus*, **how much?** is the root of the English word *quantity*. **Nouns** are often used as **Adjectives**: as, *a gold ring; a silver cup*. **Participles** are also used as **Adjectives**: as, *an increasing evil; wounded feelings*. The plurals of **this** and **that** are **these** and **those**. **A** and **an** have usually been called the **indefinite article**, and the **definite article**. **The** is an abbreviated form of **that**, and points out some *particular* thing of which we are speaking. When we wish to point out *any one* of a class without specifying *which*, we use **a** or **an**. **A** or **an** is **equal** to the word **one**, but is less emphatic.

Note 2.—**A** is used before words beginning with **consonants**, including **w, y, and h**, when the **h** is **aspirated**, and the **diphthongal** sound of **u** or **eu**, that is, when the **u** is

pronounced as if written *yu*: as, *a man, a woman, a yacht, a house, a unit, a eulogist*. To this rule we may add the word **one**, it being more correct to say such *a one*, than such *an one*. **An** is used before words commencing with a **vowel** or **h silent**: as, *an ape*; *an herb*. Words beginning with **h aspirated** and **accented** on the **second syllable** may have either **a** or **an** before them: as, *a historical narrative*, or, *an historical narrative*. Of the two the latter is to be preferred, as it sounds more euphoniously on delicate ears, and gives the organs of speech less trouble.

Note 3.—Since **a** or **an** can only be joined to nouns in the **singular** number, such examples as the following might be thought to be exceptions, unless they are explained: as, *a few apples*; *a hundred men*. In such instances, the words **few** and **hundred** are considered as **Nouns of multitude**, the preposition of being generally understood; and *a hundred men* really means *one hundred of men*. **The** is used before nouns in **both** numbers. **A** sometimes stands for **each** or **every**: as, *so much a dozen*. The **meaning** of words may be greatly **modified** by the **insertion** or **omission** of the **indefinite article**: as, *a little* and *a few*, mean **some**; *little* and *few* mean **scarcely any**. An **alteration** in the **position** of the **indefinite article** will often **change** the **signification**: as, “*I have half a sovereign*,” that is, money amounting to **ten shillings**. “*I have a half sovereign*,” that is, “*I possess a gold coin called a half sovereign*.”

Note 4.—*Article* comes from the Latin *articulus*, and signifies *a little joint*.

TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

I.— Quality	White.
Quantity in Mass or Bulk ... Definite Numeral Adjectives : Cardinal Ordinal Indefinite Numeral Adjectives Distributive Numeral Adjectives	Little.
	Five.
	Fifth.
	Some.
	Every.
III.— Distinction	The.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

By a **comparison** of **things** we discover that **some** possess **qualities** or **attributes** in a **higher degree** than others, and **Adjectives** are varied in form for the purpose of **marking** the **difference**, and this **inflection** or **variation** of the **Adjective** is called **Degrees of Comparison**: as, *wise, wiser, wisest*; John is *tall*, William is *taller*, but James is the *tallest*.

Note.—On **comparing** John, William, and James together, we ascertain the **difference** in their respective **heights**, and **inflect** the **Adjective** to express the **result** of the **comparison**.

Since the **qualities** in **objects** may be possessed in three **relative** degrees, it will follow, as a matter of course, that there are **three degrees** of **comparison** for expressing the same. There are the **Positive Degree**, the **Comparative Degree**, and the **Superlative Degree**.

The **Positive Degree** expresses the **simple quality** of a **Noun** without either **increasing** or **diminishing** such **quality**: as, a *white* spot; a *wise* man; a *sweet* apple.

The **Comparative Degree** is used to express an **increase** or **diminution** of the **quality**: as, a *wiser* man; a *sweeter* apple; a *worse* case.

The **Superlative Degree** is used to show that one thing possesses a **particular quality** in a **greater measure** than **all** the rest of the objects *with which it is compared*: as, the *wisest* man; the *worst* case.

Note 1.—Excepting cases in which the **attributes of Nouns** are **contrasted** with each other, the **quality** of the objects compared is always of the **same sort or kind**: as, this road is *wide*, that is *wider*, but the other is the *widest*. In the example here given, the learner will perceive that the **quality** indicated in each degree of comparison is that of **width or breadth**.

Note 2.—**Adjectives** which **admit of comparison** are those of **quality**, and some **Indefinite Adjectives** denoting **quantity** and **number**. There are also **Adjectives of quality**, or as they are sometimes called **Qualitative Adjectives**, which are **incapable of comparison**: as, *single*, *double*.

Rules for the Formation of the Comparative and Superlative :—

I.—In **Adjectives of one syllable** the **Positive Degree** is changed into the **Comparative** by adding **er**, and into the **Superlative** by adding **est**: as, *long*, *longer*, *longest*.

- 1.—Should the **Positive** end in **e**, **r** and **st** only are added: as, *brave*, *braver*, *bravest*.
- 2.—If the **Positive** end in a **single consonant preceded by a single vowel**, the consonant must be **doubled** before **er** and **est**: as, *hot*, *hotter*, *hottest*.
- 3.—When the **Positive** terminates in **y**, preceded by a **consonant**, the **y** must be changed into **i** before **er** and **est**: as, *sly*, *slier*, *sliest*.
- 4.—If a **vowel** precede **y** it must **not** be changed into **i** before **er** and **est**: as, *gay*, *gayer*, *gayest*.

II.—**Adjectives** consisting of **more than one syllable** are compared by prefixing **more** for the **Comparative**, and **most** for the **Superlative**:

as, *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful*; and by prefixing **less** and **least**, when the **quality** is to be **diminished**: as, *less vigorous, least vigorous*.

Note.—Many Adjectives of **two syllables**, especially such as take the **accent** on the **second syllable**, and those ending in **ble, er, ow** and **y**, are often compared by **er** and **est**: as, *polite, politer, politest*; *able, abler, ablest*; *bitter, bitterer, bitterest*; *narrow, narrower, narrowest*; *merry, merrier, merriest*. Comparison, however, by **more** and **most** in the case of Adjectives of two or more syllables is undoubtedly to be preferred. *Politer* and *politest* is not, in our judgment, so elegant as *more polite* and *most polite*.

III.—The following is a **list** of **Adjectives** which are **compared irregularly**:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Bad }	worse	worst
Evil }		
Far	farther	farthest
Fore	former	{ foremost
		{ first
Good	better	best
Hind	hinder	hindmost
Ill	worse	worst
Late	{ later	{ latest
	{ latter	{ last
Little	less	least
Many }	more	most
Much }		
Nigh	nigher	{ highest
		{ next
Old	{ older	{ oldest
	{ elder	{ eldest
[Forth, adv.]	further	furthest
[In, prep.]	inner	{ inmost
		{ innermost
[Out, adv.]	{ outer	{ outmost
	{ utter	{ utmost
		{ uttermost
[Neath, prep.]	nether	nethermost
[Up, prep.]	upper	{ upmost
		{ uppermost
[Top, noun.]	topmost

Note 1.—Adjectives are said to be compared **irregularly** when the **Comparative** or **Superlative** degree is not formed from the **same root** as that of the **Positive**, or by some **obsolete process**. The word *good*, for example, has neither the Comparative nor the Superlative degree of comparison; but *better* and *best*, from *bet*, are used to supply the deficiency.

Note 2.—**Elder** and **eldest** are applied *only* to **persons**; **older** and **oldest**, both to **persons** and **things**. The termination **ish** denotes a small degree of the quality: as, *whitish*, from *white*. Annexed to names **ish** forms a possessive Adjective: as, *English*, *Danish*. When the termination **ish** is annexed to common nouns it signifies a participation of the qualities which the nouns express: as, *foolish*, from *fool*; *knavish*, from *knave*. **Rather** is almost **identical** in **meaning** with **ish**, and therefore the two ought not to be used in reference to the **same** noun. Thus we may say, "the meat is *saltish*," but not "*rather saltish*."

A **Compound Adjective** is made up of two or more words connected by a **hyphen**: as, *well-known*.

IV.—There are some **Qualitative Adjectives** that convey the fulness of their meaning at once, and therefore do not admit of comparison. They may be arranged under three heads:—

1.—Those which qualify time or place: as, *daily*, *perpetual*, *American*.

2.—Those which are materialistic: as, *golden*, from *gold*; *wooden*, from *wood*.

3.—Those which indicate qualities that are perfect, and consequently do not admit of variation. The principal of such are the following: *True*, *false*, *perfect*, *chief*, *extreme*, *universal*, *supreme*, *circular*, *empty*, *everlasting*, *Omnipotent*, *square*, *infinite*, *dead*, *eternal*, *impossible*.

Note.—We must here remark for the benefit of the learner that Bacon speaks of "the extremist of evils;" Shakespeare, of

"the *extremist* verge." We also find the words *chiefest*, *more perfect*, and *most perfect*; and all we need say about them is, that they are departures from grammatical accuracy, whether used by the illiterate or the learned. Ought Bacon and Shakespeare, and Spenser, admitting all their excellencies, to be regarded as perfect models for imitation? We answer this question with an emphatic **no**. A thing which is **perfect** excludes all **defects**, and consequently it cannot be *more perfect*. The only legitimate exception seems to be the double superlative *most highest*, which is applied to the **Divine Being** who is *higher* than *the highest*. Some nouns, though singular in number, are used as plurals, when they denote Weight, Measure, and Number: as, *thirty head of cattle*, *fifty pound*, *twenty stone*. This violation of grammatical accuracy prevents ambiguity: thus, *ten stone*, and *ten stones* are quite different in signification. The former means **ten** in **weight**, the latter **ten** in **number**.

P R O N O U N S .

A Pronoun is a word used in the place of a Noun: as, "John left home this morning; but *he* will return in a few days."

There are **Simple** and **Compound Pronouns**. The **Simple** Pronouns are divided into—

- 1.—**Personal Pronouns.**
- 2.—**Relative Pronouns.**
- 3.—**Interrogative Pronouns.**

I.—Personal Pronouns simply stand for Nouns: as, "The King commands, and the people obey *him*."

I and **we** are pronouns of the **first person**;

thou, ye, and you, are pronouns of the **second person**; **he she, it, and they,** are **third person** pronouns.

I, we, thou, he, she, you, or ye, and oi are invariably used instead of **persons**.

It is used only for **things**; while **they** may be used either for **persons** or **things**.

Note.—The word **one**, in such phrases as, “one is struck with wonder,” is regarded as an indefinite personal pronoun. It comes from the French **on**, and it must not be confounded with the adjective, **one**. Sometimes the adjective, **one**, is used as a pronoun, both in the singular and in the plural: as, “this apple is a bad **one**, but the others are good **ones**.”

II.—**Relative Pronouns** not only stand for Nouns, but also **join** one sentence to another: “John received the book *which* you sent.”

Note 1.—These Pronouns are called **relative**, because they **relate** to some **noun** or its **equivalent** which has gone before in the sentence. The word to which they **relate** is designated the **antecedent**. In the foregoing example, *book* is the **antecedent** to the relative pronoun **which**.

Note 2.—The word **antecedent** is from the Latin *antecedere*, “to go before.” The **Relative Pronouns** **who, which, and that**, and they are used in the following manner:—

1.—**Who** is applied to **persons**.

2.—**Which** is applied to **things** and the **lower animals**.

3.—**That** is applied either to **persons** or **things**, and is often used instead of both **who** and **which**.

III.—**Interrogative Pronouns** are so called because they are used in asking questions: as, “*Who* told you?” “*Which* do you require?” “*What* have you found?” They are **who**, **which**, and **what**, and formerly the word **whether** (which of two?); but it is now more commonly used as a **conjunction**.

The Interrogative **who** is used of persons only.

The Interrogative **which** is used of persons and things.

The Interrogative **what** is applied to both persons and things.

Note.—**What** is, strictly speaking, the neuter of *who*, and can be used **substantively**, in which case it is always **neuter**; and also **adjectively** when it can be applied to both **persons** and **things**: as, “*What* is sweeter than honey?” “*What king*, going to make war against another king, sitteth not down first and consulteth?” (Luke xiv. 31.)

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

By adding the expressions **self**, **own**, and **ever** to some of the Pronouns, we get what are called **Compound Pronouns**: as, *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*. The addition of **self** or its plural **selves** to the personal pronouns makes them more **emphatic**.

Both **self** and **selves** can be used as substantives with nouns in the possessive case: as, “a man’s *self*.” **Self** is united to the **possessive case** of pronouns of the **first** and **second person**, but to the **objective case** of pronouns of the **third person**: as, *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *themselves*.

When the word **self** stands **alone** it is a **noun**.

Ever is joined to the **relative pronouns**, and extends their signification : as, *whoever*.

What is a Compound Relative, and is equal to the *thing which*, or the **antecedent** and the **relative**.

The word **own** is used with possessive pronouns, and emphasises the meaning : as, *my own, his own, their own*.

One is also found in conjunction with the following words, and used as an indefinite personal pronoun : as, *any one, some one, each one, every one, no one*.

Note 1.—The interrogatives *which* and *what*, as well as their compounds *whichever* and *whatever*, can be used as **Adjectives**. Each **other** and **one another** are called **Reciprocal Pronouns**.

Note 2.—*Myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, and *oneself*, are called **Reflective Pronouns** when they are used to show that the action of the doer reverts to himself : as, "I know *myself* now."

TABLE OF SIMPLE PRONOUNS.

I.— Personal :	{ <i>I, we,</i> <i>thou, you, or ye,</i> <i>he, she, it, they,</i> <i>Indefinite, one.</i>
II.— Relative :	{ <i>Who,</i> <i>which,</i> <i>that.</i>
III.— Interrogative :	{ <i>Who ?</i> <i>what ?</i> <i>which ?</i>

TABLE OF COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

- I.—**Personal**: { *myself,*
 thyself,
 himself.
- II.—**Possessive**: { *my own,*
 thy own,
 one's own.
- III.—**Relative**: { *what,*
 whoever,
 whichever,
 whatever.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

To **Pronouns** belong **Gender, Number, Case,** and **Person.**

1.—GENDER.**PERSONAL PRONOUNS.**

No Personal Pronoun has any distinction of Gender, excepting those of the **third person singular.** Thus, **he** is **masculine**, **she** is **feminine**, and **it** is **neuter.**

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Who is of the **common** gender.

Which is of the **neuter** gender.

That is of **all** genders.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Who is of the **common** gender.

Which is of **all** genders.

What is of the **neuter** gender.

2.—NUMBER.

The **Personal Pronouns** have **different words** for the **singular** and the **plural**: as, *I, we; thou, ye or you; he, she, it, plural they.*

3.—CASE.

The **Personal Pronouns** have **three cases**, and are **inflected** for the **possessive** and **objective cases**. These pronouns *I, thou, she, we, you* and *they*, have **two** forms for the **possessive**, namely, *my* and *mine; thy* and *thine; her* and *hers; our* and *ours; your* and *yours; their* and *theirs*.

4.—PERSON.

The **Personal Pronouns** are represented by different words, while the **interrogative** and **relative pronouns** have the **same form** for all persons.

Note 1.—The two forms of the possessive are thus distinguished: **my** is used when the noun follows it, and **mine** when the noun is omitted: as, *This is my pen; This pen is mine. This is thy book; This book is thine.*

Note 2.—Formerly **mine** and **thine** were used before nouns beginning with a vowel or h: as, "*Hast thou found me, O mine enemy?*" (1 Kings, xxi. 20); "*Mine hour is not yet come.*" (John ii. 4.)

Note 3.—The learner must be cautioned **against** using the **apostrophe** with the **possessive case** of **pronouns**. He should write *his, hers, its, yours, theirs*, and not *her's, your's*.

TABLE OF PRONOUNS.

Person.	Case.		
	Nom.	Poss.	Obj.
Pers. 1	Sing. <i>I</i>	<i>my</i> or <i>mine</i>	<i>me</i>
	Plur. <i>we</i>	<i>our</i> or <i>ours</i>	<i>us</i>
Pers. 2	Sing. <i>thou</i>	<i>thy</i> or <i>thine</i>	<i>thee</i>
	Plur. { <i>ye</i> <i>you</i> }	<i>your</i> or <i>yours</i>	<i>you</i>
Pers. 3 {	mas. <i>he</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>him</i>
	fem. <i>she</i>	<i>her</i> or <i>hers</i>	<i>her</i>
	neut. <i>it</i>	<i>its</i>	<i>it</i>
	Plur. <i>they</i>	<i>their</i> or <i>theirs</i>	<i>them</i>
Relative and Interrogative }		<i>who</i>	<i>whom</i>
		<i>which</i>	{ <i>of which</i> <i>or whose</i> }

Singular, **nominative** one; **possessive** one's; **objective** one.

Whosoever, the Compound Relative, is declined thus :—

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative	<i>Whosoever</i>	<i>Whosoever</i>
Possessive	<i>Whosoever's</i>	<i>Whosoever's</i>
Objective	<i>Whomsoever</i>	<i>Whomsoever</i>

Note.—The word **Pronoun** carries its true meaning in the name, being derived from **pro**, *for*, and **nomen**, a **noun**, and its chief use consists in being the substitute for the noun, and thus preventing constant repetition. One example will explain our meaning: "John has just arrived, and he will remain with us for a few hours, but he must return to-morrow." Without the

pronouns the sentence would read thus : "*John* has just arrived, and *John* will remain with us for a few hours, but *John* will return to-morrow. The learner will at once perceive the propriety and usefulness of the pronouns in preventing the constant repetition of the noun.

THE VERB.

A Verb is the principal word in every sentence, and denotes either existence, action, or passion; and is always expressive of being, doing, or suffering something: as, *I am*; *John writes*; *James is wounded*.

Note.—Verb, from the Latin *verbum*, means the word, and is so called because it is the chief word of a sentence.

Verbs are either transitive or intransitive.

Transitive Verbs are those which express an action that passes from the agent to an object: as, "*Cicero wrote letters to Atticus*." Here it is to be noted that the act of Cicero, the agent, terminates on letters, the object.

Intransitive Verbs are those in which the action expressed by the verb **terminates** in the **agent or subject**: as, "*James sleeps*." Here it is obvious that the *sleeping* is confined to James, and does not pass to any object.

Intransitive Verbs admit of being **divided into three classes**:—

1.—Those denoting a **change** from **one state** to **another**: as, *I was born*; *I became ill*.

2.—Those implying **action**: as, *I walk*; *I work*.

3.—Those which denote **existence** in a **certain state or condition**: as, *I live*; *I sleep*.

Note.—**Transitive** comes from the Latin *transire*, which means “to pass over,” and is so called on account of its being expressive of the action affecting an object. **Transitive verbs** are also used in both a **reflexive** and **reciprocal sense**: as, *I love myself*; *They hate one another*.

To **Verbs** belong **Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person**.

I.—VOICE.

Voice serves to show whether the **subject** is the **doer** of an **action**, or is **acted upon** by some person or thing.

Transitive Verbs have two Voices, the **active** and the **passive**.

A Verb is said to be in the **active voice** when the **subject** denotes the **agent** or **doer** of the action: as, “*Wellington vanquished Napoleon*;” and it is in the **passive voice** when the **subject** is the person or thing **acted upon**: as, “*Napoleon was conquered by Wellington*.”

Note.—The distinction between the **active** and **passive voice** is evident. Take, for instance, the foregoing examples. “*Wellington vanquished Napoleon*.” *Wellington* is the **subject** of the verb *vanquished*, and denotes the **doer** of the action, and consequently the verb *vanquished* is said to be in the **active**

voice. In the second example in which the **active voice** is changed into the **passive**, the word *Napoleon* is in the **nominative case**, being acted upon by Wellington which is in the **objective**, and under the government of the preposition **by**.

II.—MODE.

Mode denotes the **change a verb** undergoes to indicate the **manner** in which the various intentions of the mind are expressed.

Note.—**Mode**, from the Latin *modus*, signifies **manner**, and it should always be spelt **mode**, and not **mood**, which is used in a sense altogether different. There is, in fact, no connection between the two words, and one can only wonder how so many intelligent writers on English Grammar could so far forget themselves as to speak of the **moods of verbs**. The word **mood** denotes a certain state of the mind and, strictly speaking, ought to be applied only to persons. Thus, we may say, that such a person is in a *melancholy mood*, or a *cheerful mood*; but would it not be absurd to speak of a certain verb as being in a *melancholy*, or *sulky mood*?

The **Modes** of Verbs are **five**; the Indicative, the Potential, the Subjunctive, the Imperative, and the Infinitive.

The **Indicative Mode** is used in making **direct assertions**, or in **asking questions**: as, *John writes*; *Lovest thou me*?

Note.—**Indicative** is from the Latin *indicare*, “to point out.”

The **Potential Mode** is used to express the **power, liberty, possibility**, or the **necessity** of an action or of being: as, *I can run*; *He may go*; *They would not remain*; *She must attend*.

Note.—The **Potential Mode** is rejected by some *Grammarians*, because it is only a modified form of the **indicative** or

declarative mode. The difference between the **potential mode** and the **indicative mode** is this: The former declares the **power** to act; while the latter affirms the act itself. Thus, "I *may* travel," is equal to "I *have power to* travel." We think the distinction existing between the two modes quite sufficient to justify us in giving the **potential mode** a place in our Grammar. Accuracy seems to demand its retention.

The **Subjunctive Mode** is used when a **condition** or **hypothesis** is to be expressed: as, "If you *had followed* my advice, you would have been in a better position."

Note.—The word **subjunctive** is from the Latin *subjungere*, and means "to join to." It is mostly preceded by such words as *although, if, unless, provided, lest, that, &c.*

The **Imperative Mode** is the form employed to command, or to express a **wish** or **prayer**: as, "Go thy way;" "Give us this day our daily bread."

Note.—**Imperative** is from the Latin *imperare*, "to command."

The **Infinitive Mode** is used to express action or being without number or person, and, with a few exceptions, always has **to** before it: as, To love; to be disliked.

Note.—**Infinitive**, from the Latin *infinitus*, means "unlimited," and is so called on account of its being restricted neither by number nor person. The **infinitive** has also three forms. The **indefinite**: as, to love; the **incomplete**: as, to be loving; and the **complete form**: as, to have loved. The **infinitive** is likewise a **verbal noun**.

PARTICIPLES.

A **Participle** is a **verbal adjective**. There are two participles, the **present** or **imperfect**, and the **past** or **perfect**.

The **imperfect** or **present participle** ends in **ing**, and shows that the state or action is **incomplete**: as, *advising, writing*.

The **past** or **perfect participle** is used to mark the state or action as **completed**: as, *advised, written*.

Note.—**Participle**, Latin *pars*, “a part,” and *capere*, “to take,” is so called, because it **participates** in the nature of the **verb** and the **adjective**. The **perfect participle** of **transitive verbs** is always **passive**.

COMPOUND PARTICIPLES.

There are four compound participial forms:—

1.—The **Compound Perfect Participle Active**, which consists of the **perfect participle** and the word **having**: as, *having married*.

2.—The **Perfect Participle Active Progressive**, which is made up of the present participle, and the words **having been**: as, *having been teaching*.

3.—The **Imperfect Participle Passive**, compounded of the word **being**, and the perfect participle: as, *being advised*.

4.—The **Compound Perfect Participle Passive**, which consists of the words **having been** and the perfect participle: as, *having been loved*. Sometimes the **verbal** form in **ing** is used as a **noun**, and when so employed it is often called by the name of **Gerund**.

III.—TENSE.

Tense is a variation of the Verb to indicate the time when an action takes place.

Note.—Tense comes from the Latin *tempus*, and signifies time.

There are three natural divisions of time:—

1.—**Present.**

2.—**Past.**

3.—**Future.**

Each of these divisions of time is represented in Grammar by an appropriate tense: as, The wind *blows*; The wind *blew*; The wind *will blow*.

AUXILIARY VERBS INFLECTED.**BE.****Indicative Mode.****Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
I am.	We are.
Thou art.	You are.
He is.	They are.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
I was.	We were.
Thou wast.	You were.
He was.	They were.

DO.**Indicative Mode.****Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
I do.	We do.
Thou dost.	You do.
He does or doth.	They do.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
I did.	We did.
Thou didst.	You did.
He did.	They did.

Subjunctive Mode.**Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
If I do.	If we do.
If thou do.	If you do.
If he do.	If they do.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
If I did.	If we did.
If thou didst.	If you did.
If he did.	If they did.

Imperative Mode.**Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
Do, or do thou.	Do, or do you.

HAVE.**Indicative Mode.****Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
I have.	We have.
Thou hast.	You have.
He has, or hath.	They have.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
I had.	We had.
Thou hadst.	You had.
He had.	They had.

Future Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>I shall have.</i>	We shall have.
<i>Thou wilt have.</i>	You will have.
<i>He will have.</i>	They will have.

Subjunctive Mode.**Present Tense.**

Singular.
If I have.
If thou have.
If he have.

Plural.
If we have.
If you have.
If they have.

Past Tense.

Singular.
If I had.
If thou hadst.
If he had.

Plural.
If we had.
If you had.
If they had.

Future Tense.

Singular.
If I shall have.
If thou shalt or will have.
If he shall or will have.

Plural.
If we shall have.
If you shall or will have.
If they shall or will have.

Potential Mode.**Present Tense.**

Singular.
I may, can, or must have.
Thou mayst, canst, or must have.
He may, can, or must have.

Plural.
We may, can, or must have.
You may, can, or must have.
They may, can, or must have.

Past Tense.

Singular.
I might, could, would, or should have.
Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst have.
He might, could, would, or should have.

Plural.
We might, could, would, or should have.
You might, could, would, or should have.
They might, could, would, or should have.

Infinitive Mode.**Present.**

To have.

Participle.**Present or Incomplete.**

Having.

SHALL.**Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
I shall.	We shall.
Thou shalt.	You shall.
He shall.	They shall.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
I should.	We should.
Thou shouldst.	You should.
He should.	They should.

WILL.**Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
I will.	We will.
Thou wilt.	You will.
He will.	They will.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
I would.	We would.
Thou wouldst.	You would.
He would.	They would.

MAY.**Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
I may.	We may.
Thou mayst.	You may.
He may.	They may.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
I might.	We might.
Thou mightst.	You might.
He might.	They might.

CAN.**Present Tense.**

Singular.	Plural.
I can.	We can.
Thou canst.	You can.
He can.	They can.

Past Tense.

Singular.	Plural.
I could.	We could.
Thou couldst.	You could.
He could.	They could.

MUST.

Singular.	Plural.
I must.	We must.
Thou must.	You must.
He must.	They must.

OUGHT.

Singular.	Plural.
I ought.	We ought.
Thou oughtest.	You ought.
He ought.	They ought.

Note.—Ought is the **past** of to owe, but it is now used as a **present**. When it is required to express a past tense, the verb that follows must be put in the **past tense**: as, You ought to have settled your affairs. Let is a **transitive verb**, and undergoes **no change**.

The **Present Tense** expresses what is going on at the **present time**: as, The sun *shines*; I *write*.

Note.—It is necessary that we should make a few remarks on these distinctions of time, or the learner will hardly be able to make himself master of them. The **present tense** has the three following forms:—

- 1.—The **Indefinite Form**: as, James *writes*.
- 2.—The **Progressive or Incomplete Form**: as, James *is writing*.
- 3.—The **Emphatic Form**: as, James *does write*.

The **Present Indefinite Tense** is variously used, as the subjoined examples will show. It is employed to denote **habit**: as, Fishes *swim*; to represent **past actions as present**: thus, The wind

veers to the north ; to signify the **future** : as, The school *re-opens* in August next. It is also used of what a writer has stated in his works, whether he be living or dead : as, Goldsmith *says*—

“Man wants but little here below,
Nor wants that little long.”

The **Past Tense** represents an **action** or event as **past** or **finished** : as, John *broke* the table.

Note.—This tense has **three forms**, and is variously employed. It is **indefinite** : as, I *praised* him ; **progressive** or **incomplete** : as, I *was praising* him ; **emphatic** : as, I *did praise* him. The **uses** of this tense are these :—

- 1.—To show that something **took place** in the **past** : as, “God sent His Son into the world.”
- 2.—To indicate what was **customary** at a previous period : as, He *wrote* daily, that is, he *used to write* daily.
- 3.—It also stands for the **past incomplete** or **progressive** : as, While He yet *spake*, that is, *was speaking*.

The **Future Tense** implies that the action is **yet to come** : as, I *will see* you next week.

Note.—This tense is formed by the two **auxiliary verbs**, **shall** and **will**. It is also used in the three following forms :—

- 1.—The **Indefinite Form** : as, I *shall run*.
- 2.—The **Progressive Form** : as, I *shall be running*.
- 3.—The **Emphatic Form** : as, I *will run*.

THE THREE SECONDARY TENSES.

In addition to the three natural divisions of time, we have the following secondary tenses :—

The **Present Perfect Tense**, which describes an action as **just finished** and **connected** with **time present**: as, John *has broken* the window.

Note.—The auxiliary verb **have** is required to form the **perfect tense**, and is also used in the progressive form: as, We *have been reading*.

The **Pluperfect Tense** indicates that one action was finished before another action took place: as, He had learnt his lesson before the master came.

Note.—The **pluperfect tense** has a **progressive** as well as the **common form**: as, He *had been learning* his lesson. The formation of this tense requires **had**.

The **Future Perfect Tense** denotes that an action will be accomplished at a certain time in the future, or before another future action takes place: as, The professor *will have concluded* his course of lectures before the vacation.

Note.—This tense can also be used in the progressive form: as, The professor *will have been concluding* his course of lectures. **Shall have** and **will have** are the **signs** of the **future perfect tense**.

IV.—NUMBER.

Number shows whether the **verb** is in the **singular** or **plural form**. Verbs, like nouns, have two numbers, the **singular** and the **plural**: as, I *love*, he *loves*, they *love*. Only the verb **to be** has distinct forms for the plural.

V.—PERSON.

Person is applied to the **modified form** of the **verb**, and indicates whether the speaker asserts some-

thing about himself, about the person addressed, or concerning some other person or thing.

Verbs have three persons, first, second, and third person : as, I *advise*, thou *advisest*, he *advises*.

Note.—The **second** and **third** person **singular** are distinguished by terminations. The **second** person by **est** or **st** : as, Thou *think-est* ; thou *like-st* ; the **third** person by **s**, **es**, **eth** : as, He *praise-s*, he *wish-es*, he *talk-eth*.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

The **auxiliary**, or **helping verbs**, are joined to the **principal verbs** in order to assist in the formation of their voice, tense, and mode. They are, **be, do, have, shall, will, may, can, must**.

Be, do, have, and will, are also used as **principal verbs**, that is, when they are not joined with other verbs : as, He *is* foolish ; they *do* these things.

AUXILIARY VERBS EXPLAINED.

Be is used to indicate **existence**.

Have is used to indicate **possession**.

Do is used to indicate **action**.

May denotes **liberty, permission, or desire** : as, I *may* leave ; *May* the family be happy.

Can denotes **power or ability** : as, That boy *can* run, that is, he is able to run.

Must, which has no variation, implies present **necessity**: as, We *must* go. It is often used in the **perfect tense**: as, I *must have explained* that matter.

Will is the Saxon **willan**, which means "to determine, to resolve." In the **first** person **singular** and **plural**, **will** implies **resolution** or **promising**: as, We *will* not allow you to go; "I *will* make of thee a great nation." In the **second** and **third** person, **will** mostly **foretells**: as, Punishment *will* overtake the guilty.

Shall, in the **first** person, indicates **futurity**: as, I *shall* sail for America; We *shall* change our residence. In the **second** and **third** persons, **shall** denotes a **command**, **promise** or **threat**: as, "Thou shalt not steal;" "They *shall* be recompensed;" "He *shall* surely die." When used interrogatively, **shall** and **will** undergo a change of meaning: as, "*Will* ye also go?" implies intention; *Shall* I preach? has reference to the will of another whose sanction is required.

Be and **do** are auxiliaries of **form**.

Be is also the auxiliary of **voice**.

May, **can**, **must**, **should**, and **would**, are auxiliaries of **mode**.

Shall, **will**, and **have**, are auxiliaries of **tense**.

Note.—The auxiliary verbs were originally used as **distinct and independent** verbs, and were followed by the **infinitive**, having **to** omitted: as, We may (to) advise. The **primitive** signification of **may** is to be able, and it had the same

sense as that which **can** now bears: as, "They shall *may* do it." (Fortescue.) "We *may* not see the man's face, except our youngest brother be with us." (Gen. xlv. 26.)

FORMATION OF THE MODES AND TENSES.

In the **Indicative** and the **Subjunctive Mode** the *present tense* is denoted by **do**; the *past tense*, by **did**; the *perfect*, by **have**; the *pluperfect*, by **had**; the *future tense*, by **shall** or **will**; the *future perfect*, by **shall have** or **will have**. In the **potential mode** the *present tense* is indicated by **may**, **can**, or **must**; the *past tense*, by **might**, **could**, **would**, or **should**; the *perfect*, by **may have**, **can have**, or **must have**; the *pluperfect*, by **might have**, **could have**, **would have**, or **should have**.

Conjugation denotes the putting of a Verb through all its different Modes, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons, either in the Active or Passive Voice.

Note.—Conjugation is from the Latin *conjugare*, and means "to yoke or join together."

The **principal parts** of a verb are the **present tense**, **past tense**, and **past participle**.

The Verb TO BE conjugated as a Principal Verb.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

Singular.
I am.
Thou art.
He is.

Plural.
We are.
You are.
They are.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I was.
Thou wast.
He was.

Plural.

We were.
You were.
They were.

Future Tense.**Singular.**

I shall be.
Thou wilt be.
He will be.

Plural.

We shall be.
You will be.
They will be.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I have been.
Thou hast been.
He has been.

Plural.

We have been.
You have been.
They have been.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

I had been.
Thou hadst been.
He had been.

Plural.

We had been.
You had been.
They had been.

Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I shall have been.
Thou wilt have been.
He will have been.

Plural.

We shall have been.
You will have been.
They will have been.

Potential Mode.**Present Tense.****Singular.**

I may, can, or must be.
Thou mayst, canst, or must be.
He may, can, or must be.

Plural.

We may, can, or must be.
You may, can, or must be.
They may, can, or must be.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I might, could, would, or
should be.
Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,
or shouldst be.
He might, could, would, or
should be.

Plural.

We might, could, would, or
should be.
You might, could, would, or
should be.
They might, could, would, or
should be.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I may, can, or must have
been.
Thou mayst, canst, or must
have been.
He may, can, or must have
been.

Plural.

We may, can, or must have
been.
You may, can, or must have
been.
They may, can, or must have
been.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

I might, could, would, or
should have been.
Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,
or shouldst have been.
He might, could, would, or
should have been.

Plural.

We might, could, would, or
should have been.
You might, could, would, or
should have been.
They might, could, would, or
should have been.

Conditional or Subjunctive Mode.**Present Tense.****Singular.**

If I be.
If thou be.
If he be.

Plural.

If we be.
If you be.
If they be.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

If I were.
If thou wert.
If he were.

Plural.

If we were.
If you were.
If they were.

Imperative Mode.**Singular.**

Let me be.
Be, or be thou.
Let him be.

Plural.

Let us be.
Be, or be you.
Let them be.

Infinitive Mode.**Present Tense.**

To be.

Perfect Tense.

To have been.

Participles.

Present or Incomplete. **Past or Complete.** **Perfect.**
Being. *Been.* *Having been.*

PROGRESSIVE FORM.**Indicative Mode.****Present Tense.****Singular.**

I am being.
Thou art being.
He is being.

Plural.

We are being.
You are being.
They are being.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I was being.
Thou wast being.
He was being.

Plural.

We were being.
You were being.
They were being.

Conditional or Subjunctive Mode.**Past Tense.****Singular.**

If I were being.
If thou wert being.
If he were being.

Plural.

If we were being.
If you were being.
If they were being.

**Conjugation of the Regular Transitive
Verb ADVISE.****ACTIVE VOICE.****Indicative Mode.****Present Tense.****Singular.**

I advise.
Thou advisest.
He advises.

Plural.

We advise.
You advise.
They advise.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I advised.
Thou advisedst.
He advised.

Plural.

We advised.
You advised.
They advised.

Future Tense.**Singular.**

I shall or will advise.
 Thou shalt or wilt advise.
 He shall or will advise.

Plural.

We shall or will advise.
 You shall or will advise.
 They shall or will advise.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I have advised.
 Thou hast advised.
 He has advised.

Plural.

We have advised.
 You have advised.
 They have advised.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

I had advised.
 Thou hadst advised.
 He had advised.

Plural.

We had advised.
 You had advised.
 They had advised.

Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I shall or will have advised.
 Thou shalt or wilt have advised.
 He shall or will have advised.

Plural.

We shall or will have advised.
 You shall or will have advised.
 They shall or will have advised.

Potential Mode.**Present Tense.****Singular.**

I may, can, or must advise.
 Thou mayst, canst, or must
 advise.
 He may, can, or must advise.

Plural.

We may, can, or must advise.
 You may, can, or must advise.
 They may, can, or must advise.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I might, could, would, or should
 advise.
 Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,
 or shouldst advise.
 He might, could, would, or
 should advise.

Plural.

We might, could, would, or
 should advise.
 You might, could, would, or
 should advise.
 They might, could, would, or
 should advise.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I may, can, or must have
 advised.
 Thou mayst, canst, or must
 have advised.
 He may, can, or must have
 advised.

Plural.

We may, can, or must have
 advised.
 You may, can, or must have
 advised.
 They may, can, or must have
 advised.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

I might, could, would, or should
have advised.
Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst,
or shouldst have advised.
He might, could, would, or
shouldst have advised.

Plural.

We might, could, would, or
should have advised.
You might, could, would, or
should have advised.
They might, could, would, or
should have advised.

Conditional or Subjunctive Mode.**Present Tense.****Singular.**

If I advise.
If thou advise.
If he advise.

Plural.

If we advise.
If you advise.
If they advise.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

If I advised.
If thou advisedst.
If he advised.

Plural.

If we advised.
If you advised.
If they advised.

Future Tense.**Singular.**

If I shall or will advise.
If thou shalt or wilt advise.
If he shall or will advise.

Plural.

If we shall or will advise.
If you shall or will advise.
If they shall or will advise.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

If I have advised.
If thou have advised.
If he have advised.

Plural.

If we have advised.
If you have advised.
If they have advised.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

If I had advised.
If thou hadst advised.
If he had advised.

Plural.

If we had advised.
If you had advised.
If they had advised.

Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

If I shall or will have advised.
If thou shalt or wilt have
advised.
If he shall or will have
advised.

Plural.

If we shall or will have advised.
If you shall or will have
advised.
If they shall or will have
advised.

Imperative Mode.

Singular.	Plural.
Advise, or advise thou.	Advise, or advise you.

Infinitive Mode.

Present.	Perfect.
To advise.	To have advised.

Participles.

Present or Incomplete.	Perfect.
Advising.	Having advised.

When we wish to show that the action is still going on, we use what is called the **progressive** or **continuous form** of the **verb**, and this is effected by simply placing the **present participle** after the verb **to be**: as, *I am advising*.

When the **principal verb** is accompanied by the auxiliary verb **do** for the purpose of laying greater **stress** upon an assertion, it is called the **emphatic form** of the verb: as, *I do advise*; *I did write*.

A **Passive Verb** is formed by placing the **past participle** of a **transitive verb** after the verb **to be**: as, *I am*. Now, take the **past participle** of the *transitive verb* **to advise**, and put it after *I am*, and it becomes **passive**: as, *I am advised*.

ADVISE.**PASSIVE VOICE.****Indicative Mode.**

Present Tense.	
Singular.	Plural.
<i>I am advised.</i>	<i>We are advised.</i>
<i>Thou art advised.</i>	<i>You are advised.</i>
<i>He is advised.</i>	<i>They are advised.</i>

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I was advised.
Thou wast advised.
He was advised.

Plural.

We were advised.
You were advised.
They were advised.

Future Tense.**Singular.**

I shall be advised.
Thou wilt be advised.
He will be advised.

Plural.

We shall be advised.
You will be advised.
They will be advised.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I have been advised.
Thou hast been advised.
He has been advised.

Plural.

We have been advised.
You have been advised.
They have been advised.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

I had been advised.
Thou hadst been advised.
He had been advised.

Plural.

We had been advised.
You had been advised.
They had been advised.

Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I shall have been advised.
Thou wilt have been advised.
He will have been advised.

Plural.

We shall have been advised.
You will have been advised.
They will have been advised.

Potential Mode.**Present Tense.****Singular.**

I may, can, or must be advised.
Thou mayst, canst, or must be advised.
He may, can, or must be advised.

Plural.

We may, can, or must be advised.
You may, can, or must be advised.
They may, can, or must be advised.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I might, could, would, or should be advised.
Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or shouldst be advised.
He might, could, would, or should be advised.

Plural.

We might, could, would or should be advised.
You might, could, would, or should be advised.
They might, could, would, or should be advised.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

I may, can, or must have been
advised.
Thou mayst, canst, or must have
been advised.
He may, can, or must have
been advised.

Plural.

We may, can, or must have
been advised.
You may, can, or must have
been advised.
They may, can, or must have
been advised.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

I might, could, would, or should
have been advised.
Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, or
shouldst have been advised.
He might, could, would, or should
have been advised.

Plural.

We might, could, would, or
should have been advised.
You might, could, would, or
should have been advised.
They might, could, would, or
should have been advised.

Conditional or Subjunctive Mode.**Present Tense.****Singular.**

If I be advised.
If thou be advised.
If he be advised.

Plural.

If we be advised.
If you be advised.
If they be advised.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

If I were advised.
If thou wert advised.
If he were advised.

Plural.

If we were advised.
If you were advised.
If they were advised.

Future Tense.**Singular.**

If I shall or will be advised.
If thou shalt or wilt be advised.
If he shall or will be advised.

Plural.

If we shall or will be advised.
If you shall or will be advised.
If they shall or will be advised.

Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

If I have been advised.
If thou have been advised.
If he have been advised.

Plural.

If we have been advised.
If you have been advised.
If they have been advised.

Pluperfect Tense.**Singular.**

If I had been advised.
If thou had been advised.
If he had been advised.

Plural.

If we had been advised.
If you had been advised.
If they had been advised.

Future Perfect Tense.**Singular.**

If I shall or will have been
advised.
If thou shalt or wilt have been
advised.
If he shall or will have been
advised.

Plural.

If we shall or will have been
advised.
If you shall or will have been
advised.
If they shall or will have been
advised.

Imperative Mode.**Singular.**

Be advised, or be thou advised.

Plural.

Be advised, or be you advised.

Infinitive Mode.**Present Tense.**

To be advised.

Perfect Tense.

To have been advised.

Participles.

Present or Incomplete. Past or Complete. Perfect.

Being advised.

Advised. Having been advised.

The **Passive Voice** has a **progressive form**, but its use is confined to the **present** and **past tenses** of the **indicative**, and the **past tense** of the **subjunctive mode**, as exemplified below :—

Indicative Mode.**Present Tense.****Singular.**

I am being advised.
Thou art being advised.
He is being advised.

Plural.

We are being advised.
You are being advised.
They are being advised.

Past Tense.**Singular.**

I was being advised.
Thou wast being advised.
He was being advised.

Plural.

We were being advised.
You were being advised.
They were being advised.

Conditional or Subjunctive Mode.**Past Tense.****Singular.**

If I were being advised.

If thou wert being advised.

If he were being advised.

Plural.

If we were being advised.

If you were being advised.

If they were being advised.

A **verb** is said to be in the **interrogative form** when it is used to **ask questions**: as, "*Lovest thou me?*"

A **verb** is said to be in the **negative form** when it is used for the purpose of **denying**: as, He *did not* attend.

When **verbs** form their **past tense** and **perfect participle** by adding **ed** to the present, or **d** only if the verb **ends** in **e**, they are called **regular verbs**: as, *walk, walked, walked; live, lived, lived.*

Verbs which do not form their **past tense** or **perfect participle**, or **both** according to the foregoing rule, are designated **irregular verbs**: as, *write, wrote, written.*

Note.—Such verbs as require **d** or **ed** to make the **past tense** are called **weak verbs**, and verbs of the **modern conjugation**. Those verbs which form their **past tense** by a **change** or **modification** in the **word** are designated **strong verbs**, and **verbs** of the **old conjugation**: as, *ring, rang; bite, bit*. In the former of these two examples, the **i** in *ring* is changed into **a** in *rang*, and in the second, the **i** in *bite* is long, and in *bit* is modified by being made short.

In addition to the **weak** and **strong verbs** there are two other classes of verbs, known as **contracted**, and **mixed verbs**.

Contracted Verbs are subdivided into two **kinds**:—

1.—Such as have **no change** of **form** in the **present** and **past tenses**: as, *cut, cut*.

2.—Such as make the **past tense** by changing **d** into **t**: as, *lend, lent*.

Mixed Verbs, as the name imports, are such as partake of the **strong verbs** by a **change** of the **vowel**, and also of the **weak verbs** by having **d** or **t** added to them: as, *tell, told*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Irregular Verbs are divided into the following classes :—

I.—Verbs in which there is no change in the **present tense**, **past tense**, and **perfect participle**. To this class belong the following :—

Present.	Past.	Perfect Participle.
Burst	burst	burst.
Cast	cast	cast.
Cost	cost	cost.
Cut	cut	cut.
Hit	hit	hit.
Hurt	hurt	hurt.
Let	let	let.
Put	put	put.
Rid	rid	rid.
Set	set	set.
Shred	shred	shred.
Shut	shut	shut.
Split	split	split.
Spread	spread	spread.
Sweat	sweat	sweat.
Thrust	thrust	thrust.

II.—Verbs in which the **past tense** and **perfect participle** have the **same form**. Such are the following :—

Present.	Past.	Perfect Particip
Abide	abode	abode.
Behold	beheld	beheld.
Bend	bent	bent.
Bereave	bereft	bereft.
Beseech	besought	besought.
Bind	bound	bound.
Bleed	bled	bled.
Bless	blessed	blessed.
Breed	bred	bred.
Bring	brought	brought.
Build	built	built.
Buy	bought	bought.
Catch	caught	caught.
Cling	clung	clung.
Creep	crept	crept.
Deal	dealt	dealt.
Feed	fed	fed.
Feel	felt	felt.
Fight	fought	fought.
Find	found	found.
Flee	fled	fled.
Fling	flung	flung.
Grind	ground	ground.
Hear	heard	heard.
Hold	held	held.
Keep	kept.	kept.
Lay	laid	laid.
Lead	led	led.
Leave	left	left.
Lend	lent	lent.
Lose	lost	lost.
Make	made	made.
Meet	met	met.
Pay	paid	paid.
Read	read	read.
Rend	rent	rent.
Say	said	said.
Seek	sought	sought.
Sell	sold	sold.
Send	sent	sent.
Shine	shone	shone.
Shoe	shod	shod.
Shoot	shot	shot.
Sleep	aslept	aslept.
Slide	alid	alid.
<i>Speed</i>	<i>sped</i>	<i>sped.</i>
<i>Spend</i>	<i>spent</i>	<i>spent.</i>
<i>Spill</i>	<i>spilt</i>	<i>spilt.</i>

Present.	Past.	Perfect Participle.
Stand	stood	stood.
Stick	stuck	stuck.
String	strung	strung.
Teach	taught	taught.
Tell	told	told.
Think	thought	thought.
Weep	wept	wept.
Win	won	won.
Wind	wound	wound.
Wring	wrung	wrung.

III.—Verbs in which the **present tense**, **past tense**, and **perfect participle** differ from each other with regard to **form**. The list is as follows :—

Present.	Past.	Perfect Participle.
Arise	arose	arisen.
Begin	began	begun.
Blow	blew	blown.
Break	broke	broken.
Choose	chose	chosen.
Crow	crew	crowed.
Dare, <i>to venture</i>	durst	dared.
Do	did	done.
Draw	drew	drawn.
Dress	dressed	drest.
Drink	drank	drunk.
Drive	drove	driven.
Eat	ate	eaten.
Fall	fell	fallen.
Fly	flew	flown.
Forsake	forsook	forsaken.
Freeze	froze	frozen.
Give	gave	given.
Grave	graved	graven.
Grow	grew	grown.
Hew	hewed	hewn.
Know	knew	known.
Lie	lay	lain.
Mow	mowed	mown.
Ride	rode	ridden.
Rise	rose	risen.
Rive	rived	riven.
See	saw	seen.
Sew	sewed	sewn.
Shake	shook	shaken.

Present.	Past.	Perfect Participle.
Shave	shaved	shaven.
Show	showed	shown.
Sink	sank	sunk.
Slay	slew	slain.
Smite	smote	smitten.
Steal	stole	stolen.
Strive	strove	striven.
Take	took	taken.
Tear	tore	torn.
Thrive	throve	thriven.
Throw	threw	thrown.
Tread	trod	trodden.
Wax	waxed	waxen.
Wear	wore	worn.
Weave	wove	woven.
Write	wrote	written.

IV.—Verbs in which the **past tense**, or **perfect participle**, or **both**, have **two forms** :—

Present.	Past.	Perfect Participle.
Awake	awaked, or awoke	awaked.
Bear, <i>to carry</i>	bore, or bare	borne.
Bear, <i>to bring forth</i>	bore, or bare	born.
Beat	beat	beaten, or beat.
Bid	bid, or bade	bidden.
Bite	bit	bitten, or bit.
Burn	burned, or burnt	burnt.
Chide	chid	chidden, or chid.
Cleave	cleft, or clove	cleft, or cloven.
Clothe	clothed	clad, or clothed.
Curse	cursed, or curst	curst.
Dig	dug, or digged	dug, or digged.
Forget	forgot	forgotten, or forgot.
Get	got	gotten, or got.
Hang	hanged, or hung	hanged, or hung.
Hide	hid	hidden, or hid.
Knit	knitted, or knit	knitted, or knit.
Load	loaded	loaded, or laden.
Quit	quit, or quitted	quit.
Ring	rang, or rung	rung.
Saw	sawed	sawed, or sawn.
Seethe	seethed, or sod	sodden.
Shear	sheared	sheared, or shorn.
<i>Shrink</i>	<i>shrank, or shrunk</i>	<i>shrank.</i>
<i>Sing</i>	<i>sang, or sung</i>	<i>sung.</i>

Present.	Past.	Perfect Participle.
Sit	sat	sitten, or sat.
Sling	alang, or alung	alung.
Slink	slank, or slunk	slunk.
Slit	slitted, or alit	slitted, or alit.
Sow	sowed	sown, or sowed.
Speak	spoke, or spake	spoken.
Spin	span, or spun	spun.
Spit	spat, or spit	spitten, or spit.
Spring	sprang, or sprung	sprung.
Sting	stang, or stung	stung.
Stink	stank, or stunk	stunk.
Stride	strode, or strid	stridden.
Strike	struck	struck, or stricken.
String	strang, or strung	strung.
Strew, or strow	strewed, or strowed	strown, strewed, or strowed.
Swear	swore, or sware	sworn.
Swell	swelled	swollen, or swola.
Swim	swam, or swum	swum.
Swing	swang, or swung	swung.
Work	wrought	wrought, or worked.

V.—Verbs in which the **present tense** and **perfect participle** have the **same form**:—

Come	came	come.
Run	ran	run.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are deficient in **some** of the **modes** and **tenses**: as, *can*, *could*, &c.

To the class of **defective verbs** belong the following:—

Present.	Past.	Perfect Participle.
Can	could.	...
...	...	Dight.
...	...	Hight.
May	might.	...
Must.
Ought.
...	Quoth.	...
Shall	should.	...
Will	would.	...
Wis, wot	wist.	...
Worth.
...	...	Yolept.

Hight, from the obsolete verb *hatan*, signifies *named*, or *called*.

Dight, *adorned*, is a defective participle.

Worth, from the Saxon *weorthan*, "to cause to be or become," is now used only in the phrases, *Woe worth the day* ; *woe worth the man* ; in each of which the verb is in the **imperative mode** : *Woe be to the day* ; *woe be to the man*.

Ought, the **past tense** of *to owe*, is now used as a **present**. In the use of this verb **past time** can only be expressed by putting the following verb into the **past** : as, *You ought to have paid your respects*.

Quoth, *said*, moves in a narrow sphere, being used only in first and third person singular, and invariably precedes its subject : as, *Quoth I* ; *quoth he*.

Yclept, past participle, from the Saxon *ge-clypcan*, denotes *called*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs admit of being used only in the **third person singular**, and always have the pronoun **it** for their **nominative** : as, *It snows* ; *it rains*.

Note.—These three verbs *me-lists*, *it pleases me* ; *me-thinks*, *it seems to me* ; *meseems*, *it seems to me*, are, properly speaking, **impersonal verbs**. The last is also used in the past tense : as, *meseemed*, *it seemed to me*.

A D V E R B S .

An Adverb is that part of speech which is used to qualify a **Verb**, an **Adjective**, or another **Adverb** : as, *James runs well* ; *he is a most pious man* ; *too late*.

Note.—In the first example the verb **runs** is **qualified** by the adverb **well**; in the second, the adjective **pious** is **qualified** by the adverb **most**; and in the third, there are **two adverbs**, the former **qualifying** the latter.

Adverbs are divided into different classes according to their signification. Thus:—

1.—**Adverbs of Time**, whether **present**, **past**, or **future**. To this class belong the following:—*Afresh, after, afterwards, again, ago, already, always, anew, anon, awhile, before, betimes, by-and-by, continually, continuously, daily, directly, early, oftsoons, erewhile, erst, ever, formerly, fortnightly, generally, hereafter, hereupon, hourly, immediately, late, lately, long, monthly, mostly, never, next, not yet, now, now-a-days, often, once, seldom, sometimes, soon, then, thereafter, thereupon, to-day, to-morrow, weekly, when, whilom, while, whilst, yearly, yesterday, yestreen.*

Note.—Though **while** and **whilst** are used in the same sense, the **latter word** is the **superlative degree** of the former. The words **yesterday, yestreen, to-day, and to-morrow**, are really **nouns**, but are used **alone**, a preposition being understood. Thus, I received notice **yesterday**, that is, *during* yesterday. In such instances the word may be considered as used **adverbially**.

2.—**Adverbs of Place**:—*Aboard, above, after, ahead, anywhere, apart, around, ashore, aside, away, back, backward, backwards, before, behind, below, beneath, beyond, down, downward, downwards, elsewhere, everywhere, far, forth, forward, fro, hence, here, hither, in, left, near, nowhere, off, out, right, round, sideways, thence, there, thither, to, to-and-fro, underneath, unto, up, upward, upwards, whence, where, whither, wide, within, without, yonder.*

3.—**Adverbs of Degree**:—*Almost, altogether, enough, especially, exceedingly, excessively, extremely, greatly, highly, least, less, more, most, nearly, only, quite, rather, scarcely, too, very.*

4.—**Adverbs of Quantity**:—*Abundantly, entirely, enough, too much, little, much, partly, somewhat, &c.*

5.—**Adverbs of Order**:—*First, or firstly, secondly, thirdly, fourthly, fifthly, lastly, finally, &c.*

6.—**Adverbs of Number**:—*Once, twice, thrice, often, seldom.*

7.—**Adverbs of Quality or Manner**:—*Aloud, well, ill, wisely, foolishly, badly, slowly*; with a multitude of others formed from **adjectives** and **participles** by adding **ly**, or by the change of **le** into **ly**: as, *bold, boldly*; *able, ably.*

Note.—**Adjectives** which end in **y** with a consonant before it, change the **y** into **i** before adding **ly**: as, *hasty, hastily. Adjectives terminating in le, change the e into y*: as, *noble, nobly.* There are, however, deviations from this rule: as, *sole, solely*; *whole, wholly.*

8.—**Adverbs of Affirmation**:—*Certainly, truly, verily, doubtless, undoubtedly, indeed, really, surely, ay, yea, yes.*

9.—**Adverbs of Negation**:—*Nay, no, not, not at all, by no means, in no wise.*

10.—**Adverbs of Doubt or Contingency**:—*Perhaps, peradventure, probably, perchance, &c.*

11.—**Adverbs of Inference**:—*Hence, thence, whence, accordingly, therefore, why, wherefore*

12.—**Adverbs of Interrogation:**—*How, why, wherefore, whether, when, whence, where, wherein, where-with, whereby, wherewithal.*

Adverbial Phrases are made up of several words which are used as **adverbs**. Such are: *By no means, in general, upon the whole, at least, at once, at present, at random, in future, by little and little, by all possible means, with great difficulty, by and by, now and then, of necessity, of course, in the very worst manner possible, in the dark, at large, upside down, at cross purposes, pell-mell, topsy-turvy.*

Note.—Some words appear to be used **both as adverbs and prepositions**, and the learner often finds it a difficult task to distinguish the one from the other. If this ambiguous part of speech is not followed by an **objective case**, expressed or understood, it must be considered an **adverb**; but should it **govern an objective case** it is a **preposition**: as, “Wherewithal shall I come *before* the Lord?” (Micah vi.) In this example the word **before** is a **preposition**, governing **Lord** in the objective case. “You tell me what I knew *before*.” (Dryden.) Here the word **before** is an **adverb**, because it does not govern an objective case either expressed or understood.

TABLE OF ADVERBS.

1.—Time	When.
2.—Place	Here.
3.—Degree	Greatly.
4.—Quantity	Much.
5.—Order	Secondly.
6.—Number	Once.
7.—Quality or Manner	Slowly.
8.—Affirmative	Yes.
9.—Negative	Not.
10.—Doubt or Contingency	Perhaps.
11.—Inference	Wherefore.
12.—Interrogative	Why.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Some **adverbs** are compared by **er** and **est**: as, *soon, sooner, soonest*; *often, oftener, oftenest*; but the greater number are compared by **more** and **most**: as, *charmingly, more charmingly, most charmingly*.

Adverbs Irregularly Compared.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Badly, evilly, ill	worse	worst.
Far	farther	farthest.
Forth	further	furthest.
Late	later	latest.
Little	less	least.
Much	more	most.
Nigh, near	nearer	nearest, next.

Rather, from *rathe*, *early*, is a comparative adjective, and signifies **earlier**. It is now used **adverbially**.

Very is used as an adverb, but is in fact an **adjective**, signifying **real or true**: as, "*Very* God of *very* God." The adverbial form of *very* is **verily**.

No is an **adjective** when followed by a **noun**: as, That boy pays no attention to his teacher. **Erst**, *first*, formerly, is the **superlative** of *ere*, *before*, which has no positive degree.

Lief, comparative, *liever*, *gladly*, *willingly*, is **defective**, having no superlative. It occurs in familiar language: as, I had as *lief* go as remain.

Some words are used **both** as **adjectives** and **adverbs**: as, *much* (**adj.**) time has been wasted. "*It is much* (**adv.**) better to give than to receive."

The adverb **early** is thus compared: *early, earlier, earliest*. In **poetry**, too, some other adverbs in **ly** are compared by **er** and **est**: as, *gladlier*. Some **Adverbs** do not admit of **comparison**: as, *now, then, where*.

P R E P O S I T I O N S .

A Preposition serves to mark the position of one word in relation to another, and requires after it either a Noun, Pronoun, Verb, or Adjective: as, The man is *in* the house. The word **in** is the **preposition**, and shows the **relation** of the noun **house** to the **man**. He smote his servant *on* the cheek. In this sentence the preposition **on** marks the **relation** of the act of **smiting** to the word **cheek**. The soldier was stained *with* blood. **With** is the **preposition**, and indicates the **relation** of the attribute **stained** to **blood**.

Note.—The **relations** chiefly indicated by **prepositions** are those of **place, time, and causality**. This relation denoted by the preposition may be between **two nouns, a noun and a verb, and also between a noun and an adjective**.

A List of Prepositions.

A ft	around	between	I n
above	aslant	betwixt	inside
about	astride	beyond	into
across	at	but	N ear
adown	athwart	by	next
afore	atween	C oncerning	nigh
after	atwixt	considering	O f
against	B ating	D own	off
along	before	during	on
amid	behind	E re	opposite
amidst	below	except	over
among	beneath	excepting	outside
amongst	beside	F or	P ast
<i>anent</i>	<i>besides</i>	from	pending

A List of Prepositions—Continued.

Regarding	Through	towards	upon
respecting	throughout	Unto	With
round	till	under	within
Save	to	underneath	without
since	toward	up	withal

A List of Compound Prepositions or Prepositional Phrases.

According to	In favour of
Agreeably to	In opposition to
Apart from	In place of
Apropos of	In preference to
Away from	In quest of
By means of	In reference to
By reason of	In regard to
By virtue of	In respect of
Conformably to	In search of
For the sake of	In spite of
In accordance with	Instead of
In addition to	On account of
In case of	On behalf of
In comparison to	Out of
In compliance with	Owing to
In consequence of	With reference to
In defiance of	With regard to

Note 1.—The word **preposition** is so called, because it is generally placed before nouns and pronouns. It is derived from the Latin *prae*, **before**, and *positus*, **placed**. Prepositions are never inflected.

Note 2.—By analysing the prepositions we shall find that they are not so much a **distinct** part of speech as a **combination** or **contraction** of other words. This will appear evident by pointing out the component parts of the following words: **About** is from a *on*, and *boda*, *boundary*, **on the boundary**; **amidst**, from a *on* and *mid*, meaning **in the middle**; **before** and **behind** are from the verb *be* and *fore* and *hind*. Sometimes prepositions are united to verbs, in order to aid their signification, as, "I will laugh at your calamity."

The following are the principal prepositions which the learner may commit to memory :—

**“Between, besides, above, beneath, about,
Behind, beyond, among, within, without ;
At, after, towards, near, against, upon,
Before, until, with, into, from, of, on.”**

CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction is used to join together either single words, or sentences : as, Two and three are five ; John plays, *but* he does not dance.

Note.—Conjunction is from the Latin *conjungere*, and means “to join together.”

Conjunctions are divided into two principal classes, namely, *conjunctive* or *copulative*, and *disjunctive* : as, “God called the light day ; *and* the darkness he called night.” (Gen. i. 5) ; “The hope of the righteous shall be gladness, *but* the expectation of the wicked shall perish.” (Prov. x. 28.)

There is a marked difference in the meaning of a conjunctive or copulative conjunction, and a disjunctive conjunction :—

A Conjunctive or Copulative Conjunction is one that not only **joins sentences**, but also **unites their meaning**. **A Disjunctive Conjunction joins sentences**, but **disunites their meaning**.

The following are considered **Conjunctive** or **Copulative Conjunctions** :—*Accordingly, after, also, and, as, because, before, both, consequently, even, for, further, furthermore, how, if, likewise, moreover, provided, seeing, since, so, that, then, therefore, till, until, when, whence, whenever, where, whereafter, whereat, whereby, wherefore, wherein, whereof, whereon, whereout, whereto, whereunto, whereupon, wherever, wherewith, while, whilst, whither, whithersoever, why.*

The **Disjunctive Conjunctions** are less numerous, being as follows :—*Albeit, although, but, either, else, except, howbeit, however, lest, neither, nevertheless, nor, notwithstanding, or, otherwise, save, still, than, though, unless, whereas, whether, yet.*

Some Grammarians divide conjunctions into two classes, called **co-ordinative conjunctions** and **subordinative conjunctions**.

A **Co-ordinative Conjunction** is so called, because it is used to unite two **principal** sentences. To this class belong the following :—*Accordingly, also, and, because, both, but, consequently, either, else, even, for, further, furthermore, however, likewise, moreover, neither, nor, nevertheless, notwithstanding, or, otherwise, so, still, then, therefore, whence, wherefore, whether, yet.*

A **Subordinative Conjunction** is so called, because it connects a **subordinate** with a **principal sentence**. Such are the following :—*After, albeit, although, as, because, before, but, ere, except, for, how, howbeit, however, if, lest, nevertheless, notwithstanding, provided, save, seeing, since, so, than, that, though, till, unless, until, when, whence, whenever, where, whereafter,*

whereas, whereat, whereby, wherefore, wherein, whereof, whereon, whereout, whereto, whereunto, whereupon, wherever, wherewith, whether, while, whilst, whither, whithersoever, why, yet.

According to their specific signification, conjunctions are **subdivided** into :—

- 1.—**Comparative** conjunctions : *As, than.*
- 2.—**Adversative** conjunctions : *But, however, yet, notwithstanding, though, although, except, save, granting that.*
- 3.—**Causal** conjunctions : *For, since, because, that, lest, seeing that, whereas, in order that.*
- 4.—**Conditional** or **hypothetical** conjunctions : *If, so, unless, provided.*
- 5.—**Illative** conjunctions : *Then, therefore, wherefore.*
- 6.—**Exclusive** conjunctions : *Neither, nor.*
- 7.—**Exceptive** conjunctions : *Unless.*
- 8.—**Temporal** conjunctions : *As soon as, before, after, when, while.*

Such as have others corresponding to them are called **Correlative Conjunctions**. They are : *Though, although—yet ; Both—and ; Either—or ; Neither—nor ; So—as ; Whether—or ; Not—but, but also : as, “ Though he was rich, yet for our sakes he became poor.”*

Note 1.—In the foregoing example the conjunction **yet** answers to the conjunction **though**. The same remark applies to all the **correlative conjunctions**.

Note 2.—We must also remark that the same word is often used as an **adverb**, a **preposition**, and a **conjunction**. According to Grant **prepositions** are termed **conjunctions**, when used before members of a sentence : as, "He cannot go, **for** he is sick;" "**For** the love of God I beg assistance, **for** I am starving." Here the *first* "for" is a **conjunction**, the *second* is a **preposition**, and the *third* a **conjunction**. "There is no question *but* the King of Spain will reform more of the abuses." (Addison.) In this example the word **but** is a **conjunction**. "Who can it be, ye gods, *but* perjured Lycon?" (Smith.) Here **but** is a **preposition**. "I am, my Lord, *but* as my betters are, that led me thither." Here **but** is an **adverb**. "Good heavens! *but* she is handsome." In the last example the word **but** is an **interjection**.

We here subjoin a list of the principal conjunctions which should be committed to memory :—

**And, seeing, likewise, for, because, although,
Or, either, neither, nor, except, if, so;
But, then, unless, yet, otherwise, wherefore,
Whereas, indeed, than, whether, since, therefore."**

INTERJECTIONS.

The word **Interjection** signifies a sudden emotion of the mind connected with grief, pain, surprise or, joy : as, "*Alas!* For the times so corrupted."

Note.—The word **interjection**, from the Latin *interjectus*, means "thrown between," and is so denominated on account of its being **thrown in** to express mental emotion. An **interjection** has no inflection, neither is it used in the formation of sentences. Several of the other parts of speech are often employed as **interjections** : as, *What! strange!*

In the subjoined list will be found the principal **interjections**:—*Adieu! ah! aha! ahoy! alack! alas! avant! away! ay, ay! begone! behold! bravo! eh! farewell! faugh! fie! fy! foh! fudge! good-bye! ha! hah! hail! hark! heigh-ho! hey! heyday! hist! ho! holla! hollo! horrible! hurrah! hush! huzza! indeed! list! lo! look! marry! mum! O! oh! oho! pish! poh! pooh! prithee! pshaw! pugh! see! soho! striking! tush! ugh! welcome! zooks! zounds!*

DERIVATION.

Derivation belongs to that part of **Etymology** by which we are taught to **trace** words to their **original roots**. Words are either **roots** or **derivatives**. **Roots** or **primitive words** do not admit of being traced to any simpler form; while **derivatives** are made up from the roots. The one is called **primary**, and the other **secondary**. A **primary derivative** is formed from the **root** by a **change** in the **body** of the **word**: as, *strike, stroke*. A **secondary derivative** is made by means of **prefixes** and **affixes** or **suffixes**: as, *speaking, be-speak; learning, learn-er*.

Note.—The learner will notice the difference between the two words **strike** and **stroke**. The alteration takes place in the body of the word by simply changing the vowel **i** into the vowel **o**. The word **stroke** is, therefore, considered to be a **primary derivative**. In the second example we have newly-coined words by adding a **prefix** in the one case, and an **affix** or **suffix** in the other. Thus, the word *speak* by the addition of the prefix *be-*, is made into *be-speak*, and the word *learn* becomes

learn-er by adding to it the affix **er**. *Be-speak* and *learn-er* are, therefore, called **secondary derivatives**. When the additional syllable is placed **before** the root, it is called a **prefix**, and when a letter or syllable is put **after** the root, we call it an **affix** or **suffix**: as, *mis-take*, *prince-ly*, *weigh-t*.

The **formation of words** is **effected** in **different** ways as follows:—

1.—By a **change** or **modification** in the **word itself**: as, *gold*, *gild*; *dig*, *ditch*.

2.—By the **use of prefixes**: as, *stride*, *be-stride*; *moan*, *be-moan*.

3.—By **means of affixes** or **suffixes**: as, *king*, *king-dom*.

4.—By **uniting two or more words** which are then called **compound words**: as, *railway*, *wind-mill*, *handicraftsman*.

Note.—The **basis** of the **English language** is that of the **Anglo-Saxon**. Not only the **roots** or **primitive words** and **primary derivations** are traceable to the **Anglo-Saxon**, but a very large number of the **compound words** and **secondary derivatives** spring from the same source. Many words have been introduced from the Latin and French languages, and a few from the Italian, Spanish, Hebrew, and Arabic. The technical terms used in philosophy, botany, physics, medicine, mathematics, &c., come to us from the Greek tongue.

ENGLISH OR SAXON PREFIXES.

A, used as a prefix, signifies *in* or *on*: as, **a-bed**, that is, in bed; **a-shore**, that is, on shore.

Be, *about*, *over*, *upon*: as, **be-fore**, **be-side**. It *sometimes* gives a transitive signification to verbs, or

intensifies the meaning : as, **be**-stride, **be**-moan, **be**-daub, that is, to daub *all* over.

En, Em, in or *into* : as, **en**-rol, **em**-balm. It also signifies *to make*, and thus changes nouns and adjectives into verbs : as, **en**-slave, **em**-bitter, **em**-power.

For, *not, opposition, wrong, completely* : as, **for**-bid, **for**-bear, **for**-swear, **for**-lorn.

Fore, *before* : as, **fore**-most, **fore**-tell.

Mis, *error, failure* : as, **mis**-conduct, **mis**-take.

N, *not* : as, **n**-either, **n**-or, **n**-ever.

Out, *superiority or excess* : as, **out**-shine, **out**-live.

Over, *above* : as, **over**-done, **over**-seer.

Un, *not, before and adverb or adjective* : as, **un**-likely, **un**-speakable. Before a verb it denotes **un**-doing : as, **un**-dress, **un**-do, **un**-tie, **un**-fold.

To, *this* : as, **to**-day, **to**-night.

Under, *beneath* : as, **under**-lay, **under**-sell.

Up, *upwards* : as, **up**-start, **up**-hold ; and *sub*-version : as, **up**-set.

With, *against or away* : as **with**-stand, **with**-draw.

LATIN PREFIXES.

A, ab, abs, signifies *from* : as, **a**-vert, **ab**-solve, **abs**-tract.

Ad, which appears under the forms of **a**, **ao**, **af**, **ag**, **al**, **am**, **an**, **ap**, **ar**, **as**, **at**, *to* : as, **ad**-here, **a**-scend, **af**-firm, **as**-sume, **at**-tract, &c.

Am or **amb** denotes *round* : as, **am**-putate, **am**-bient.

Ante or **anti**, *before* : as, **ante**-diluvian, **anti**-cipate.

Bene, *well* : as, **bene**-fit, **bene**-factor.

Bi or **bis**, *two, twice* : as, **bi**-ped, **bi**-sect, **bis**-cuit.

Circum, *round* : as, **circum**-navigate, **circum**-vent.

Con, **com**, **co**, **col**, **cog**, **cor**, *with* or *together* : as, **con**-voke, **co**-operate, **col**-league, **cog**-nate, **cor**-rupt.

Contra, **contro**, and the French **counter**, signifying *against* : as, **contra**-dict, **contro**-vert, **counter**-balance.

De, *down* : as, **de**-ject, **de**-scend, **de**-molish.

Dis, **di**, **dif**, *asunder* : as, **dis**-tract, **di**-verge, **dif**-fer.

Equi, *equally* : as, **equi**-distant.

Ex, **e**, **eo**, or **ef**, *out of* : as, **ex**-tract, **e**-gress, **ec**-centric, **ef**-flux.

Extra, *beyond* : as, **extra**-ordinary, **extra**-vagrant.

In, which, in certain positions, becomes **im**, **ig**, **il**, **ir**, denotes *into* before a verb, and before an adjective *not*: as, **in**-ject, **in**-vade, **il**-lume, **im**-plore, **ir**-rigate, **in**-active, **ig**-noble, **il**-legal.

Inter, *between*: as, **inter**-vene, **inter**-lude, **intel**-ligent.

Intra, *in the inside of*: as, **intra**-mural.

Intro, *within*: as, **intro**-duce.

Juxta, *nigh to*: as, **juxta**-position.

Non, *not*: as, **non**-descript, **non**-juror.

Ob, which is modified into **o**, **oc**, **of**, **op**, **os**, signifies *against* or *in the way of*: as, **ob**-tain, **o**-mit, **op**-pose, **oc**-cur.

Per, which sometimes appears as **pel** and **pol**, denotes *through* or *thoroughly*: as, **per**-spire, **pel**-lucid, **pol**-lute, **per**-fect.

Post, *after*: as, **post**-pone, **post**-script, **post**-humous.

Prae or **pre**, *before*: as, **pre**-fix, **pre**-ordain, **pre**-cede.

Praeter or **preter**, *beside, past or beyond*: as, **preter**-natural, **preter**-mit.

Pro, *for, forwards*: as, **pro**-noun, **pro**-ceed, **pro**-gress.

Re, *back, again*: as, **re**-tract, **re**-move, **re**-mit.

Retro, *backwards* : as, **retro**-grade, **retro**-spective.

Se, *apart* : as, **se**-duce, **se**-crete, **se**-cure.

Semi, *half* : as, **semi**-circle.

Sine, *without* : as, **sine**-cure, **sim**-ple, **sin**-cere.

Sub, which appears under the forms of **su**, **suc**, **suf**, **sug**, **sup**, **sur**, and **sus**, denotes *under* : as, **sub**-lunary, **sub**-scribe, **suc**-ceed, **suf**-fer, **sug**-gest, **sus**-pend.

Subter, *under* : as, **subter**-fuge, **subter**-fluous.

Super, *above* or *over* : as, **super**-scribe, **super**-numery. We have also the French **sur** in such words as **sur**-pass, **sur**-tout.

Trans or **tra**, and the French **tres**, *across*, meaning from one place to another : as, **trans**-port, **tra**-duce, **tres**-pass.

Ultra, *beyond* : as, **ultra**-montane, **ultra**-marine.

Vice or **vis**, *in the place of* : as, **vice**-roy, **vis**-count.

GREEK PREFIXES.

A or **an** signifies *not* : as, **an**-archy, **a**-nomalous, **a**-pathy.

Amphi, *both* : as, **amphi**-bious, that is, having *both* lives, or capable of living either on land or in *water*.

Ana, *up* or *through*: as, **ana**-tomy, **ana**-lyse;
and also *again*: as, **ana**-baptist.

Anti or **ant**, *against*: as, **anti**-dote, **ant**-arctic.

Apo or **aph**, *from*: as, **apo**-gee, **aph**-elion.

Arch, *chief*: as, **arch**-angel, **arch**-bishop.

Aute, *self*: as, **auto**-graph, **auto**-biography.

Cata, **cat** or **cath**, *down*: as, **cata**-strophe,
cat-echism, **cath**-edral.

Dia, *through*: as, **dia**-meter, **dia**-phoretic.

Dys, *difficult*, *ill*: as, **dys**-pepsia, **dys**-entery.

En, which sometimes becomes **el** and **em**, denotes
in: as, **en**-demic, **el**-lipsis, **em**-phasis.

Epi, or **ep**, **eph**, *upon*: as, **epi**-taph, **ep**-och,
eph-emeral.

Eu, **ev**, *well*: as, **eu**-phonious, **ev**-angelical.

Ex or **ec**, *out of*: as, **ex**-odus, **ec**-stasy.

Hemi, *half*: as, **hemi**-sphere, **hemi**-stich.

Hetero, *different*: as, **hetero**-geneous, **hetero**-
loxy.

Homo, *the same*: as, **homo**-type.

Hyper, *over*: as, **hyper**-critical, **hyper**-bolical.

Hypo or **hyph**, *under*: **hypo**-thesis, **hyph**-en.

Meta, met, meth, denotes change or transmutation : as, **meta**-morphosis, **met**-onomy, **meth**-od.

Mono or **mon,** *alone* : as, **mono**-syllable, **mon**-arch.

Pan, *all* : as, **pan**-demonium, **pan**-theon.

Para or **par,** *beside* : as, **para**-phrase, **pár**-allel.

Peri, *round about* : as, **peri**-phrasis.

Philo or **phil,** *loving* : as, **philo**-sophy, **phil**-anthropy.

Poly, *many* : as, **poly**-syllable, **poly**-anth, **poly**-glot.

Pro, *before* : as, **pro**-gramme, **pro**-logue.

Pros, *to* : as, **pros**-elyte, **pros**-ody.

Pseudo, *false* : as, **pseudo**-nym, **pseudo**-nymous.

Syn or **sy, sym, syl,** *with or together* : as, **syn**-agogue, **sy**-stem, **sym**-pathy, **syl**-lable.

Note.—It will have been observed that some of the **prefixes** undergo a **change** in composition. The prefix **syn**, for instance, becomes **syl**, as in the word *syllable*; **sy**, as in *system*; and **sym**, as in *sympathy*. These modifications, however, have been noticed as they occurred in the preceding lists of prefixes.

The parts of speech formed from **roots** or **other words** by the use of **Affixes** or **Suffixes** are, **nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.**

I.—**Affixes** by which **Nouns** are formed.

1.—**Affixes** of **nouns** which denote a **person**, or the **doer** of an action :—

English or Saxon Affixes of Nouns.

Ar	as, lie	li- ar
Ard	as, drunk	drunk- ard
Art	as, brag	bragg- art
Er	as, write	writ- er
Ess	as, seam	seam- stress
Or	as, sail	sail- or
Ster	as, pun	pun- ster
Yer	as, law	law- yer
Man	as, tin	tin- man
Maid	as, milk	milk- maid

Note.—The termination **er** from **wex**, a man, denotes a **person**, and appears in modern language as **er**, **ar**, **or**, &c. Words ending in **er** do not, however, always denote a person: as, *fodder*, *shutter*.

French Affixes of Nouns.

Ier	as, cloth	cloth- ier
Eer	as, auction	auction- eer
Ee	as, trust	trust- ee
iff	as, plaint	plaint- iff

Latin Affixes of Nouns.

Ant	as, assist	assist- ant
Ary	as, mission	mission- ary
Ent	as, depend	depend- ent
Sor	as, profess	profes- sor
Tor	as, execute	execu- tor
Trix	as, execute	execu- trix

Greek Affixes of Nouns.

Ast	as, enthusiasm	enthusi- ast
Itē	as, Israel	Israel- ite
Ist	as, art	art- ist
Ian	as, history	histor- ian
Ine	as, hero	hero- ine
Olan	as, physio	physi- o-ian

2.—**Abstract Nouns** which denote **state, action, quality, or condition.**

English or Saxon Affixes of Abstract Nouns.

Dom	as, king	king-dom
Hood	as, man	man-hood
Head	as, god	god-head
Ness	as, white	white-ness
Red	as, kind	kind-red
Ric	as, bishop	bishop-ric
Ry	as, husband	husband-ry
Ship	as, hard	hard-ship
Ery	as, cook	cook-ery
Ter	as, laugh	laugh-ter
Th	as, long	length
T	as, give	gif-t
Lock	as, wed	wed-lock
Y	as, wind	wind-y
Ledge	as, know	know-ledge
ing	as, walk	walk-ing
Age	as, till	till-age

Latin Affixes of Abstract Nouns.

Acy	as, conspire	conspir-acy
Ance	as, attend	attend-ance
Ancy	as, constant	const-ancy
Cy	as, curate	cura-cy
Ice	as, just	just-ice
Ence	as, depend	depend-ence
Ency	as, tend	tend-ency
Ion	as, opine	opin-ion
Tion	as, move	mo-tion
Ment	as, content	content-ment
Sion	as, transgress	transgres-sion
Ty	as, poor	pover-ty
Ity	as, able	abil-ity
Ure	as, expose	expos-ure
Or	as, err	err-or
Escence	as, putrid	putr-escence
Tude	as, grateful	grati-tude
Mony	<i>pater</i> (Father)	patri-mony
Y	<i>miser</i> (wretched)	miser-y
Ture	<i>pictura</i>	pict-ure
T	<i>the thing made or done</i>	fac-t

Greek Affixes of Abstract Nouns.

Io	as, muse	mus-ic
Ism	as, baptise	bapt-ism
Y	as, monarch	monarch-y

Note.—To this class of Greek affixes belong the following :
: as, epitom-**e**, an abridgment; **sis** : **as**, empha-**sis**, stress ;
ia : **as**, diora-**ma**, an exhibition of pictures ; **asm** : **as**,
 eon-**asm**, a redundant word.

3.—**Nouns** that denote the **instrument**, or
 means by which something is effected.

English or Saxon Affixes.

Le	as, hand	hand- le
El	as, shove	shov- el
Et	as, hack	hatch- et

Latin Affixes.

Chre	as, sepulchrum	sepul- chre
Ble	as, stabulum	sta- ble
Bule	as, vestibulum	vesti- bule
Tre	as, sceptrum	scep- tre
Brum	as, candelabra	candela- brum
Cle	as, vehiculum	vehi- cle
Ment	as, échappement	escape- ment

4.—**Affixes** which form **diminutive Nouns**.

English or Saxon Affixes.

Et	as, flower	flower- et
Ock	as, hill	hill- ock
Let	as, stream	stream- let
Ling	as, duck	duck- ling
Kin	as, four	fir- kin
Ie	as, lass	lass- ie
Y	as, babe	bab- y
Ing	as, fourth	farth- ing

Latin Affixes.

Ule	as, globe	glob- ule
Et	as, lance	lanc- et
Cule	as, animal	animal- cule

Latin Affixes—continued.

Icle	as, part	part- icle
Aster	as, poet	poet- aster
Culum	as, animal	animal- culum
Cle	as, corpus	corpus- cle
Le	as, circulus	circ- le
El	as, libellus	lib- el

Greek Affixes.

Isk	as, aster (a star)	aster- isk
------------	--------------------	-------------------

Note 1.—By **diminutive nouns** is meant **little nouns**: as, *manikin*, a little man, from *man*; *globule*, a little globe, from *globe*; *asterisk*, a little star, from *aster*, a star; *duckling*, a little duck, from *duck*.

Note 2.—The following **affixes** are also used in the formation of **nouns**: as, from *sow* we have *see-d*; from *blow* we get *blow-m*; from *shade* is derived *shad-ow*; so *ward*, *ward-en*; while **ing** and **son** are used to denote descent: as, *John*, *Johnson*, the son of John; *Athel-ing*, from *aethel*, royal, and *ling*, young. This term was applied by the Anglo-Saxons to the heir to the throne.

II.—Affixes by which Adjectives are formed.**English or Saxon Affixes.**

En , made of:	as, gold	gold- en
Ful , full of:	as, delight	delight- ful
Ey , pertaining to:	as, clay	clay- ey
Y , pertaining to:	as, wind	wind- y
Isk , rather so:	as, green	green- isk
Like , like:	as, child	child- like
Ly , like:	as, man	man- ly
Less , without:	as, hope	hope- less
Some , causing:	as, trouble	trouble- some
Ern , <i>aern</i> , a place, direction } to or from:	as, south	south- ern
Erly , direction to or from:	as, north	north- erly
Teen , ten:	as, four	four- teen
Ty , ten:	as, seven	seven- ty
Th , ordinal:	as, six	six- th
Ward , towards:	as, home	home- wards
Fold , times:	as, ten	ten- fold

Note 1.—The termination **ish** is used either in proper names : as, **British** ; in a diminutive sense : as, **whitish** ; or in a bad sense : as, **roguish**. **Ish** also signifies *to make* : as, **fin-ish**, *to make an end of*. **Ing** is the participial adjective active : as, **avoid-ing** ; **d, ed**, is the participial adjective passive : as, **educate-d** ; **gift-ed**.

Note 2.—Some of the adjectives ending in **d** or **ed** are formed from nouns : as, **horn**, **horn-ed** ; **wing**, **wing-ed**. This termination is of frequent occurrence in compound words which are derived : as, **rosy-finger-ed**. The affixes **y** and **ey** are substantially the same, the latter being employed when the word ends in **y**, as **clay-ey**.

Note 3.—The affix **teen** denotes that **ten** is to be added : as, **four**, **four-teen**. **Ten** becomes **teen** and **ty** : as, **five**, **fif-teen**, **fif-ty**. **Ty** signifies that **ten** is to be multiplied : as, **six**, **six-ty**.

LATIN AFFIXES OF ADJECTIVES.

As the following affixes convey the same idea, and denote **belonging to**, it is not necessary to give them separately. They are : **Al, an, ane, ean, ant, aneous, ar, ary, en, ene, ent, ern, ian, ine, ic, ical, ile, il, id, ive, ute** : as, **bride**, **brid-al**, that is, *belonging to a bride* ; **hum-an, mund-ane, Europ-ean, eleg-ant, extr-aneous, angul-ar, tribut-ary, heath-en, terr-ene, differ-ent, mod-ern, femin-ine, Christ-ian, cub-ic, naut-ical, gent-ile, civ-il, ferv-id, express-ive, ac-ute**. To this class also belong the French **ique** and **esque** : **un-ique, pictur-esque**.

Able, *able*, or *fit to be* : as, **peace-able**.

Ible, same meaning as *able* : as, **sense**, **sens-ible**.

Eous, ous, *full of* : as, **lign-eous**, **dubi-ous** ; also *given to* : as, **religi-ous**, *given to religion*.

Ose, *abounding in* : as, **verb-ose**, *having abundance of words*.

Aceous, *having the qualities of* : as, herb-**aceous**, *having the nature of herbs*.

Acious, *full of* : as, viv-**acious**, *full of life*.

Ate, *to make* : as, navig-**ate**; *made* : as, desol-**ate**; also one who is passive : as, deleg-**ate**; *office* : as, elector-**ate**.

Escent, *growing* : as, conval-**escent**.

And, end, *that is to be* : as, multiplic-**and**; divid-**end**.

Fic, *causing or making* : as, terri-**fic**.

Ior, *more* : as, super-**ior**, jun-**ior**.

Ferous, *bearing* : as, somni-**ferous**.

Lent, *full of* : as, vio-**lent**.

Ble, ple, *signifying number* : as, dou-**ble**, tri-**ple**.

Ory, *pertaining to* : as, curs-**ory**, prefat-**ory**.

Uous, *abounding in* : as, ard-**uous**.

GREEK AFFIXES OF ADJECTIVES.

The following list of **affixes** from the Greek imply **quality**, or signify *belonging to* : **Ic, ical, ine, idal, iac, stic, stical, tic, tical** : as, *angel*, angel-**ic**, canon-**ical**, adamant-**ine**, pyram-**idal**, demon-**iac**, pla-**stic**, sophi-**stical**, splene-**tic**, splene-**tical**.

The *affixes* **oid** and **oidal** signify *like or pertaining*

to : as, typh-**oid**, that is, *like* or *pertaining to typhus* ;
spher-**oidal**, that is, *resembling a sphere*.

III.—**Affixes** by which **Verbs** are **formed**.

ENGLISH OR SAXON AFFIXES OF VERBS.

En , to make :	as, hard	hard- en
Se	as, clean	clean- se
Ish	as, burn	burn- ish
Y	as, bull	bull- y
Le , frequentative force :	as, start	start- le
K , frequentative force :	as, tell	tal- k
Er , frequentative force :	as, climb	clamb- er
On , diminutive force :	as, beck	beck- on
Om , diminutive force :	as, blush	bloss- om

LATIN AFFIXES OF VERBS.

Ate, **ite**, and **it**, which signify *to act, do, or make* :
as, termin-**ate**, exped-**ite**, cred-**it**.

Fy, to make : as, *pure*, puri-**fy**, to make *pure* ;
forti-**fy**.

Esce, to become more and more : as, conval-**esce**,
efferv-**esce**.

GREEK AFFIXES OF VERBS.

Ise or **ize**, denoting *to make* : as, spiritual-**ise**,
critic-**ise**, equal-**ize**.

IV.—**Affixes** by which **Adverbs** are **formed**.

Adverbs are to a very great extent formed from
adjectives, though they are also derived from other
parts of speech.

Ly , <i>like</i> :	as, strong	strong-ly
Wise , <i>way or manner</i> :	as, like	like-wise
Way , <i>ways, way or manner</i> :	as, side	side-ways
Ward , <i>towards</i> :	as, home	home-ward
Wards , <i>towards</i> :	as, back	back-wards
Times	as, some	some-times
Long	as, head	head-long
S	as, beside	beside-s
St	as, while	whil-st

To the foregoing we may add **om**, an old dative term : as, seld-**om** ; **n** : as, whe-**n**, the-**n** ; **re** : he-**re**, the-**re** ; **ncc**, *from* : he-**ncc**, *from this place* ; the-**ncc**, *from that place* ; **ther**, *towards* : hi-**ther**, *towards this place* ; thi-**ther**, *towards that place* ; **ce** : on-**ce**, twi-**ce**, thri-**ce**.

COMPOUND WORDS.

A **Compound Word** consists of **two** or **more** words : as, *stout-hearted*, *servant-man*. Such words may or may not be connected by a hyphen : as, *man-eater*, *moonlight*. The **second** word is generally qualified by the **first** : as, *coal-field*. Here the learner must observe that we do not refer to any field, but to a **particular field** in which **coal** is **found**.

Note.—In **compound words** attention to the **accent** is sometimes very necessary, or confusion might arise. This may be illustrated by one or two examples. It would, for instance, be correct to say that a **crow** is a **black bird**, but it would be absurd and false to assert that a **crow** is a **black-bird**. Again, there is a marvellous distinction between a **mad house** and a **mad-house**. The former denotes a family wholly insane ; the latter a place for the reception of lunatics. The connecting of compound words by means of a hyphen often conveys a different *meaning* : thus, **horse-hair** is not the same in signification as *horse's hair*. The former has reference to the **material** *simply*, while the latter denotes the **hair** of **one horse** only.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

Compound Nouns are formed in the following manner :—

By **two nouns** : as, *corn-field* ; by a **noun** and an **adjective** : as, *highway* ; by a **noun** and **verb** : as, *sing-song* ; by a **participle** and a **noun** : as, *riding-habit* ; by a **noun** and an **adverb** : as, *out-rider* ; by a **noun** with a **preposition** : as, *after-noon* ; by an **adverb** and a **verb** : as, *wel-come* ; by a **verb preceding** : as, *run-away* ; by one **verb** with **another** : as, *make-believe* ; by placing a **noun** before an **adjective** : as, *Prince-Regent*. Under this division come such phrases as *forget-me-not*.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

Compound Adjectives are made up in the following manner :—

By a **noun** and an **adjective** : as, *child-like* ; by one **adjective** with **another** : as, *sea-green* ; by combining an **adverb** with an **adjective** : as, *up-right* ; by uniting a **complete participle** with an **adjective** or an **adverb** : as, *new-born, over-fed* ; by a **present participle** with a **noun** : as, *heart-rending* ; by a **complete participle** with a **noun** : as, *blood-stained* ; by a **present participle** with an **adjective** or an **adverb** : as, *all-ruling, fast-sailing*.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Compound Pronouns are formed by placing the words **self** and **own** after personal pronouns : as, *myself, my own* ; and the words **so ever**, or **so-ever**

after a **relative** or **interrogative** pronoun : as, *whoso, whoever, whosoever*.

COMPOUND VERBS.

Compound Verbs are formed as follows :—

By a **noun** with a **verb** : as, *back-bite* ; by an **adjective** with a **verb** : as, *white-wash* ; by an **adverb** before a **verb** : as, *under-value*.

Note.—Sometimes prepositions are employed to assist the signification of verbs : as, I will laugh *at* you ; he despaired *of* getting his rights. These verbs are sometimes called **preposition verbs**.

COMPOUND ADVERBS.

Compound Adverbs are made up in the following way :—

By a **noun** with a **noun** : as, *side-ways* ; by a **noun** and an **adjective** : as, *other-wise* ; by **two adverbs** : as, *thence-forward* ; by a **preposition** and an **adverb** : as, *there-from* ; by an **adjective** and an **adverb** : as, *some-how* ; by a **noun** with a **preposition** before it : as, *up-stairs*. There are also **complex compounds** : as, *notwithstanding, nevertheless*.

COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.

Compound Prepositions are formed :—

By one **preposition** with **another** : as, *with-in* ; by an **adverb** and a **noun** : as, *out-side* ; by an **adverb** with a **preposition** : as, *through-out*. To these we may add such phrases as, *by means of, according to*.

COMPOUND CONJUNCTIONS.

Compound Conjunctions may be composed of:—

A **conjunction** and an **adjective**: as, *al-though*;
two adverbs: as, *how-ever*; a **noun** with an
adjective before it: as, *like-wise*; a **preposition**
preceded by an **adverb**: as, *where-by*.

Note 1.—Such expressions as the following are regarded as **phrases**:—*Fair and square*; *cut and come again*; *might and main*; *time and tide*; *rhyme and reason*.

Note 2.—Some of the words regarded as compound are **simulated**, and others are in **disguise**. As a specimen of a **simulated** compound we may mention *sparrow-grass*, from *asparagus*. *Vouchsafe* is a compound in disguise, and means *vouch us safe*.

ANGLO-SAXON WORDS from which MODERN ENGLISH WORDS are DERIVED:—

Ac, an oak: acorn.
Aecer, a field: acre.
Aefer, ever: every, for ever.
Aeft, aft: after.
Aer, before: ere, early, or.
Aethel, noble: Athel-ing.
An, one: an, a, any, only.
Agan, to own: disown, owe.
Aglian, to pain: ailing, ailment.
Arewe, a shoot: arrow.
Ascian, to seek: ask.
Bacan, to bake: bacon, batch.
Baelg, a bag: belly, bulge, bellows.
Baetan, to curb: bit for horses.

Bald, brave: bold, Baldwin.
Bana, death, killer: bane, wolf's bane.
Banc, a bench: a bank, embank.
Beatan, to beat: batter, beetle.
Bellan, to bellow: bawl.
Beodan, to order: bid, beadle.
Beon, to be: be.
Beorgan, to protect: burg, borough.
Edinburgh, that is, Edwin's burgh.
Beorht, bright: Albert, Ethelbert.
Beran, to bear: forbear, mis-born.
Betan, to improve: better.

- Bicnian**, to nod: beck, beacon.
Bidan, to wait: bide, abide, abode.
Bindan, to bind: bind, bond.
Blac, pale: bleach.
Blaesan, to blow: blast, bluster.
Blith, cheerful: blithe, bliss.
Blowan, to blow as a flower: bloom.
Boc, the beech: book.
Bodig, stature: body.
Bolla, a round vessel: boll, bowl.
Bot, satisfaction or remedy: to boot, bootless.
Brad, broad: breath, broad, Bradburn.
Brecan, to break: brake, breach.
Bredan, to nourish: bread.
Bredan, to weave: braid.
Brucan, to have the use of: brook, broker.
Brytan, to break: brittle.
Buan, to cultivate: boor, meaning a peasant, neighbour.
Bugan, to bend: bow, bough, elbow, light.
Bur, a dwelling: bower.
Burne, a stream: bourn.
By, a dwelling: Der-by, Appleby.
Byldan, to confirm: build.
Byrnan, to burn: burnish, brimstone.
Ceapian, to buy: cheap, chapman.
Cearcian, to creak: cark, chirp.
Ceaster, fort, town: Chester, Manchester, Leicester.
Ceorl, a countryman: churl, carlin.
- Geowan**, to chew: chew, cud.
Gampian, to fight: champion.
Clud, a stone, a hillock: clot, clod.
Clufan, to cleave: cliff, clover.
Gnafa, a boy: knave.
Gnawan, to know: knowledge.
Gnaep, a top, a button: knap, knob, nape.
Gnyttan, to knit: knot.
Comb, a valley: Wycombe.
Cruth, a crowd: crew, uncrowded.
Cryc, a staff: crook, crutch.
Gunnan, to know: ken, uncouth.
Gunnian, to search out: conner, cunning.
Cwellan, to quell: kill, quail.
Cwethan, to speak: quoth.
Gwen, a woman: queen, quean.
Gwysan, to crush: quash, squeeze.
Gyn, kin: kind, kindred.
Gyththe, kindred: kith, kin. Hence the phrase, *kith and kin*.
Daeg, a day: dawn, daisy.
Dael, a part; **daelan**, to divide: deal, dole.
Deawian, to moisten: dew, bedew, dough, thaw.
Deman, to judge: deem, deemster.
Dennu, vale: den, Walden.
Deor, a wild animal: deer, Durham.
Deore, precious: dear, darling.
Dihtan, to prepare: dight.
Dic, a dike, a ditch: dig.
Disc, a plate, a table: disc, dish, deak.

- Doom**, *judgment* : doom, dooms-day.
- Don**, *to do, or put* : do, don, doff.
- Dragan**, *to draw* : drag, draw, dray, draught.
- Drigan**, *to dry* : drought, drug.
- Dreogan**, *to work* : drudge.
- Drypan**, *to drip* : drop, droop.
- Dreorig**, *sad* : dreary.
- Dugan**, *to be worth* : doughty.
- Dun**, *a hill* : downs, Dundee, Snowdon.
- Duru**, *a passage* : door, through.
- Dweorth**, *bent* : dwarf.
- Dwinan**, *to fade* : dwindle.
- Dyppan**, *to dip* : dip, dive, deep.
- Dyne**, *noise* : din, dun.
- Dynt**, *a stroke* : dent, dint, dimple.
- Ea**, *water* : island, Anglesey.
- Ead**, *possession* : Edward.
- Eal**, *the whole* : all, also, always.
- Eage**, *the eye* : eye, Egbert.
- Eald**, *old* : elder, alderman.
- Eorl**, *a brave man* : Earl.
- Erian**, *to plough* : ear (of corn), earing, earth.
- Efese**, *brim, brink* : eaves of a house, Evesham.
- Engle**, *an Angle* : one of the Angli, England.
- Fadan**, *to set in order* : fad, fiddle, fidget, faddle.
- Faem**, *froth* : foam.
- Faest**, *firm* : fist, fast, fasten.
- Faegnian**, *to be glad* : fain.
- Faran**, *to go, to travel, to happen* : ferry, fare, ford, farewell, welfare, fieldfare, thoroughfare.
- Fealo**, *yellow* : fallow.
- Fedan**, *to feed* : food, fodder, father.
- Felan**, *to touch* : feel, felt.
- Feoh**, *value, cattle* : fee.
- Feorm**, *food* : farm.
- Freon**, *to love* : friend.
- Fretan**, *to gnaw* : fret.
- Fian**, *to hate* : fiend, foe, feud.
- Fleon**, *to flee* : fly, flutter.
- Flowan**, *to flow* : float, fleet, flood.
- Fole**, *the people* : folk, Norfolk.
- Fot**, *the foot* : feet, fetter.
- Frician**, *to leap* : freak, frog, frik.
- Fugel**, *a bird* : fowl, fowler.
- Fulian**, *to corrupt* : foul, filth, defile.
- Fullian**, *to whiten* : fuller.
- Fysan**, *to hurry* : fuss.
- Gabban**, *to scoff* : jibe, jabber, gibberish, gabble.
- Galan**, *to sing* : nightingale.
- Gangan**, *to go* : gang, gangway, outgo.
- Gax**, *a dart* : to gore.
- Gast**, *the breath, a spirit* : gas, ghost, aghast.
- Geap**, *wide* : gap, gape.
- Geard**, *an enclosure* : yard, garden.
- Georn**, *anxious* : yearn, earnest.
- Geotan**, *to pour out* : gutter, gush.
- Gerefa**, *a governor* : reeve, sherriff, literally, shire-reeve.
- Gifan**, *to give* : forgive, gavel-kind.
- Glewan**, *to shine* : gleam, glow.
- God**, *good* : God, gospel, that is, good spell, meaning good news.

- Gorst**, a prickly bush : gorse, gooseberry, that is, a prickly berry.
- Grafan**, to dig : grave, engrave, groove, graft.
- Grapien**, to seize : grab, grapple, grip, grope.
- Greot**, dust : grit, grate.
- Guma**, a man : bridegroom, literally the *bride's man*.
- Habban**, to have : behave, hap.
- Haelan**, to heal : hale, health, holy.
- Had**, condition or state : God-head, priesthood.
- Hafoc**, a hawk : havoc.
- Ham**, a dwelling : home, hamlet, Hampstead, Buckingham.
- Hals**, neck : halter, hanberk.
- Halig**, holy : hallow, halidom.
- Hand**, the hand : handsome, handsel.
- Hangian**, to hang : hang, hinge, Stonehenge.
- Hefan**, to raise : heave, heaven.
- Healdan**, to hold : hilt.
- Helan**, to hide : hole, hell. Hence *Helliar*, one who covers houses with thatch or slates.
- Heord**, a flock, treasure : herd, hoard.
- Here**, an army, a multitude : harbinger, herring, harbour, heriot.
- Holm**, an island : Axholm.
- Hrernan**, to cry out : scream.
- Hund**, a dog : hound, hunt.
- Hurst**, a wood : Midhurst, Bradhurst.
- Hus**, a house : husband, hut, hustings.
- Hwaet**, sharp : whet, as to whet, sharpen.
- Hweorfan**, to turn : warp.
- Hyd**, to cover : hide, hat, hood.
- Hyran**, to hear : hire, rehearsal.
- Hyth**, a port : Hythe.
- Ing**, a pasture : Reading.
- Lacnian**, to cure : leech.
- Laedan**, to lead : ladder, loadstone.
- Laene**, frail : lean.
- Laeccan**, to seize : catch.
- Laer**, doctrine : love, learn.
- Leag**, a field : lea, Elmsley.
- Leasian**, to lie : leasing.
- Laet**, late : last, lazy.
- Lencten**, spring : Lent.
- Lecgan**, to lay : law, layer, ledge.
- Leod**, a countryman, people : lad, lewd.
- Lit**, a ship : lighter, lighterman.
- Lic**, a corpse : lich-gate.
- Maca**, a mate, a wife : match, helpmate.
- Magan**, to be able : may, main.
- Maenan**, to think : mean, mind.
- Mase**, a whirlpool : maze, amaze.
- Mearc**, a mark : marches.
- Meltan**, to soften : melt, smelt, molten.
- Mengan**, to mix : mingle, mongrel, among, amongst.
- Mere**, a lake or marsh : Ellesmere, Windermere.
- Metsian**, to feed : meat, mess.
- Mona**, the moon : month, Monday.
- Naesse**, a headland : ness, naye, as in *Caitness*.

- Neah, close to:** near, nigh, neighbour.
Nither, down: nether, beneath, nethermost.
Word, north: Norwich.
Oga, dread: ugly.
Plihtan, to pledge: plight, plot.
Pin, a point: fin, pin, pine.
Pocca, a bag: pouch, pocket.
Pycan, to pick: peck, picket.
Fyndan, to enclose: pound, pen, pond, pin.
Raepan, to bind: rap, rope, wrap.
Rane, proud: rank, rankle.
Rathe, soon: rather.
Reafian, to rob: rover, bereave.
Recan, to strain: rack, reach.
Reccan, to be solicitous: reck, reckless.
Rein, clean: rinse.
Rude, red: ruddy.
Ric, dominion: bishopric.
Rip, harvest: ripe, reap.
Ripau, to reap: reaper, enrich.
Rice, power: rich, enrich.
Ridan, to go: ride, road, ready.
Ridan, to ride: road, roadstead.
Rim, number: rhyme.
Sceadan, to divide: scot, scatter, shed.
Secan, to seek: beseech.
Secapan, to form: shape, shop, ship, courtship.
Secotan, to shoot: shot, sheet, shut.
Seethan, to injure: scathless.
Seiran, to cut: shear, scar, shire, shears, share, shore, ploughshare.
Scridan, to clothe: shroud.
Scufan, to thrust: scuffle, shovel.
Seec, sick: sigh.
Seothan, to boil: seethe, sod, soap-sud.
Seaxan, Saxon: Sussex, Meddese.
Slacian, to be slow: slack, slug, sluggish.
Slefan, to cover: sleeve.
Sean, to see: sight, seer.
Settan, to set: settle, sad, seat.
Singan, to strain: sing.
Sipan, to sip: sop, supper, soup.
Slagan, to kill: slay, slaughter, sly, onslaught.
Snican, to creep: snake, sneak.
Slawan, to be slow: slow, sloth.
Specca, a spot: speck, speckled.
Soth, true: sooth, soothsayer.
Sped, success: speed, God-speed.
Spell, message, news: spell, Gospel.
Spinnan, to spin: spider, spindle.
Spor, a heel: spur, spurn.
Steoran, to guide: steer.
Stan, stone: Stanley.
Steopan, to bereave: stepson.
Steorphan, to die: starve.
Stepan, to raise: steep, step.
Stigan, to ascend: stage, stairs.
Strican, to touch: strike, streak.
Styran, to steer: stern, star-board.
Stow, a place: stow, bestow, Chepstow.
Stoc, a place: Woodstock.
Sund, narrow sea: sound.

Suth, *south* : Sussex, Sudbury.

Sund, *light* : sun.

Swam, *a mushroom* : swamp.

Swapan, *to remove* : sweep, swoop.

Swart, *black* : swarthy.

Swifan, *to turn round* : swivel, swift.

Syllan, *to sell* : sale, sell, hand-sel.

Tellan, *to tell* : tale, told.

Taelan, *to speak ill of* : tell-tale.

Teogan, *to draw* : tug, tough, tow, tight, tooth, team.

Teotha, *tenth* : tithe.

Teran, *to drag* : tare, tear, torn.

Thenkan, *to think*.

Thincan, *to seem* : methinks.

Thirtian, *to pierce* : thrill, thirl, nostril, thraldom.

Thorpe, *a village* : Bilsthorpe.

Thringan, *to press* : throng.

Treon, *true* : truth, betroth, troth.

Thweorian, *to twist* : thwart.

Twa, *two* : two, twain, twin, twice, betwixt.

Tynan, *to wall in* : town, ton, Kingston, that is, *Kings-town*.

Ut, *out* : out, uttermost.

Waed, *a garment* : weed, a widow's weeds.

Waet, *moist* : wet.

Wanian, *to fail* : wan, wane, want.

Waepen, *a weapon* : weapon, wapentake.

Waez, *cautious* : ware, wary, beware.

Wald, *a wood* : wold, Waltham.

Wealdan, *to rule* : wield, Bretwalda.

Weallan, *to spring up* : well, Wells, Holywell.

Weard, *guard* : ward, warden, guardian.

Wenan, *to think* : ween, over-weening.

Wed, *a pledge* : wed, wedlock.

Wendan, *to turn* : wend, went, wander.

Wefan, *to weave* : web, weft, wife.

Weg, *a way* : wain, a wagon.

Weorth, *worth* : worthy, worship.

Wesan, *to be* : was, were.

Wic, *a dwelling* : Alnwick.

Wind, *the wind* : winnow, winter.

Wicca, *a witch* : witch, wicked.

Wiht, *a thing, a creature* : wight, whit.

Witan, *to know* : wit, wis, wise, wot, weet, wizard.

Wrigan, *to clothe* : rig, array.

Wringan, *to wring* : wring, wrangle.

Wolcen, *cloud* : welkin.

Writhan, *to bind* : writhe, wreath.

Wop, *weeping* : whoop.

Wunian, *to dwell* : wont, won.

Wyn, *joy* : winsome.

Wrecan, *to revenge* : wreak, wretch.

Wyr, *root* : liverwort.

LATIN ROOTS from which ENGLISH WORDS are DERIVED :—

- Acer**, *sharp* : acrid, acridity, acrimony.
- Acerbus**, *bitter* : acerbity.
- Acidus**, *sour* : acid.
- Acuo**, *acutum*, *I sharpen* : acute, acumen.
- Aedes**, *a house* : edify, edifice.
- Aequus**, *equal* : equal, equality, iniquity, equator.
- Aestimo**, *I estimate* : esteem, estimate, estimation.
- Aestus**, *the tide* : estuary.
- Aeternus**, *endless* : eternity.
- Aether**, *air in the higher regions* : ether, ethereal.
- Aevum**, *an age* : coeval, longevity.
- Ager**, *a field* : agriculture, peregrination.
- Agger**, *a heap* : exaggerate, exaggeration.
- Ago**, *actum*, *I do* : act, actual, agitate, agent.
- Alacer**, *cheerful* : alacrity.
- Albus**, *white* : alb, albino.
- Alius**, *another* ; **alienus**, *foreign* : alien, alienate, alias, inalienable.
- Alo**, *I nourish* : aliment, alimony.
- Alter**, *one of two* : alternate, altercation, alter.
- Altus**, *high* : altitude, exalt, exaltation.
- Ambulo**, *I walk* : amble, perambulate, preamble.
- Amicus**, *a friend* : amicable, inimical.
- Amo**, *I love* : amorous, amity, amatory.
- Amoenus**, *pleasant* : amenity.
- Amplus**, *large* : ample, amplify, amplification.
- Ancilla**, *a maid-servant* : ancillary.
- Ango**, *I vex* : anger, anguish, anxiety.
- Angulus**, *a corner* : angle, angular, triangle.
- Anima**, *life* ; **animus**, *the mind* : animate, animal, unanimous.
- Annulus**, *a ring* : annular.
- Annus**, *a year* : annual, annals.
- Antiquus**, *ancient* : antiquity, antique, antiquated.
- Anus**, *an aged woman* : anile.
- Aperio**, *I open* : April, aperture, aperture.
- Apto**, *I fit* : apt, adept, adaptation, adapt.
- Apis**, *a bee* : apiary.
- Aqua**, *water* : aquatic, aqueous, aqueduct.
- Aquila**, *an eagle* : aquiline.
- Arbiter**, *a judge* : arbitrate, arbitrary.
- Arbor**, *a tree* : arbour, arborescent, arborescent.
- Arceo**, *I keep off* : coerce, exercise.
- Areo**, *I am athirst* : arid.
- Arcus**, *a bow* ; archer, arc, overarch.
- Ardeo**, *I burn* : ardent, ardon, ardour.

- Ardus**, *lofty* : arduous.
Arguo, *I argue* : argue, argument.
Arma, *arms* : army, armour, disarm.
Aro, *I plough* : arable.
Ars, *an art* : artful, artist, artificial, inert.
Artus, *a joint* ; **articulus**, *a little joint* : article, articulate, inarticulate.
Asinus, *an ass* : asinine.
Asper, *rough* : asperity, exasperate.
Atrox, *cruel* : atrocious, atrocity.
Audax, *bold* : audacious, audacity.
Audio, *I hear* : audience, auditor.
Augeo, *I increase* : auction, author, augmentation, auxiliary.
Augur, *a soothsayer* : inaugurate, inauguration.
Auris, *the ear* : auricular, aurist.
Aurum, *gold* : auriferous, orange, inauration.
Auster, *the south wind* : austral.
Auxilium, *help* : auxiliary.
Avarus, *covetous* : avarice.
Avidus, *greedy* : avidity.
Avis, *a bird* : aviary.
Bacchus, *the god of wine* : bacchanal, bacchanalian.
Barba, *a beard* : barber, barb.
Barbarus, *foreign* : barbarian, barbarity.
Beatus, *blessed* : beatitude, beatific.
Bellum, *war* : rebel, belligerent, rebellion.
- Bellus**, *beautiful* : embellish.
Bene, *well* : benefit, benediction.
Benignus, *kind* : benignant, benign.
Bibo, *I drink* : bibber, imbibe.
Bini, *two by two* : combine, binary.
Bis, *twice* : bisect, piped.
Bonus, *good* : bounty, boon, bonny, bonus.
Brevis, *short* : brief, abbreviate, brevity, breviary, abridge.
Brutus, *senseless* : brute.
Bursa, *an ox-hide* : a purse, bourse.
Caballus, *a horse* : cavalry.
Cado, *I fall* : case, accident, cadence.
Caedo, *I kill* : suicide, concise, precise.
Calco, *I tread* : inculcate.
Calor, *heat* : caloric.
Calculus, *a pebble* : calculate.
Calx, *lime* : calcine, chalk.
Camera, *a vault or arched roof* : comrade, chamber.
Campus, *a plain* : camp, champion, decamp, campaign.
Cancelli, *cross bars, lattice-work* : cancel, chancel.
Cancer, *a crab* : cancer, canker.
Candeo, *I am white, I burn* : candid, candidate, incense, incentive, incendiary, candour.
Canis, *a dog* : canine, kennel.
Canto, *I sing* : canto, canticle, incantation, accent, recant, chant, enchantment.
Capillus, *a goat* : capillary.

- Capio**, *I take*: capable, accept, except, capacious, captious, captive.
- Caput**, *the head*: cape, capital, chapter, chaplet, captain, decapitate.
- Carbo**, *coal*: carbon, carbuncle, carbonaceous.
- Carcer**, *a prison*: incarcerate, incarceration.
- Cardo**, *a hinge*: cardinal.
- Careo**, *I want*: caret, it is wanting.
- Carmen**, *a song*: charm.
- Caro**, *carnis, flesh*: carnal, carnage, carnival, carnivorous, incarnate, charnal.
- Carpō**, *I pluck*: carp.
- Carrus**, *a car*: cart, carry, chariot.
- Cartilago**, *gristle*: cartilaginous.
- Carus**, *dear*: caress, cheer, cherish, charity.
- Castus**, *pure*: chaste, incest.
- Castigo**, *I chastise*: castigate, castigation.
- Causa**, *a cause*: accuse, excuse.
- Caveo**, *cautum, I beware*: caution.
- Cavus**, *hollow*: cave, cavern, cavity, concave, excavate.
- Cedo**, *I go, I yield*: cede, accede, exceed, cease, de cease, proceed.
- Celeber**, *renowned*: celebrate, celebration, celebrity.
- Celer**, *swift*: celerity, accelerate.
- Cella**, *cellar*: cell, cellarage.
- Celo**, *I hide, I cover*: conceal.
- Censeo**, *I estimate, am displeased*: census, censor, censure, censorious.
- Centum**, *a hundred*: cent, century, centurion, centipede.
- Centrum**, *centre*: centrifugal, centripetal, eccentric.
- Gera**, *vaz*: sincera.
- Cerebrum**, *the brain*: cerebral.
- Cerno**, *eretur, I judge, I distinguish*: discern, concern, discreet, secret, decree.
- Certo**, *I vie with, I contest*: concert.
- Certus**, *sure*: certain, certify, certificate.
- Charta**, *paper*: chart, charter, card, cartoon, chartist.
- Chorda**, *a string*: chord.
- Cico**, *citum, I provoke and egg on*: cite, excite, excitement.
- Cilium**, *the eyelid*: ciliary, supercilious.
- Gingo**, *I gird*: cincture, cinctured, succinct.
- Cinis**, *cineris*: cinder.
- Circus**, *a ring or circle*: circular, circulate, circulation, circus, circuit.
- Civis**, *a citizen*: civil, civilise, city, civility.
- Clam**, *by stealth, secretly*: clandestine.
- Clamo**, *I speak aloud*: clamour, exclaim.
- Clarus**, *clear*: clarify, declare.
- Glassis**, *a class, or rank, of citizens*: classic, classical, classify.
- Claudo**, *clausum, I shut, or close*: clause, close, conclude, conclusion, exclude, exclusion, closet.
- Clemens**, *merciful*: clemency, inclement.

- Clino**, *I bend*: clinic, recline, incline, declension.
- Clivus**, *a slope*: declivity, proclivity, cliff, acclivity.
- Codex**, *codicis*, *the trunk of a tree, a book or roll*, being so called, because they were anciently made of boards, as some are at this day: code, codicil.
- Coelum**, *the sky, heaven*: celestial.
- Cognosco**, *I know*: cognizable, recognise.
- Colo**, *cultum*, *I till*: culture, colony, cultivate, agriculture.
- Collum**, *the neck*: collar.
- Colo**, *colatum*, *I strain*: colander, percolate.
- Color**, *colour*: discolour, discoloured.
- Comes**, *a companion*: count, concomitant.
- Commodus**, *proportionate, exact*: commodity, commodious, incommode.
- Communis**, *common*: communicate, excommunication.
- Concilium**, *an assembly*: council.
- Concilio**, *I join*: conciliate, conciliation, reconcile.
- Conditio**, *I pickle*: condiment.
- Convexus**, *arched*: convex, convexity.
- Contra**, *against*: counter, contrary.
- Copia**, *abundance*: copious, abundance.
- Copulo**, *I unite*: couple, copulative.
- Coquo**, *coctum*, *I boil, or bake*: cook, decoction, concoct.
- Cors**, *the heart*: core, cordial, courage, concord, accord, discord, record.
- Cornu**, *a horn*: unicorn.
- Corona**, *a crown*: coronet, coronation.
- Corpus**, *the body*: corpse, corporal, corporeal, corporation, corpulent, incorporate.
- Costa**, *a side*: coast, costal, accost.
- Cras**, *to-morrow*: procrastinate, procrastination.
- Crassus**, *thick*: gross, coarse.
- Credo**, *I believe*: creed, credit, creditable, credible, creditor, credence.
- Cremo**, *I burn*: cremation.
- Creo**, *creatum*, *I create, or make*: create, creation, recreation, creature.
- Crepeo**, *I creak as a door*: crepitate, decrepit.
- Cresco**, *I grow, or increase*: crescent, concrete, increase, excrescence.
- Crimen**, *a crime*: criminal, recriminate.
- Cruz**, *a cross*: crucify, crucible, excruciate.
- Cubo**, *cumbo*, *I bend, I lie down*: incubus, incumbent, cubit, succumb.
- Culpa**, *a fault*: culpable, inculpate, exculpate.
- Cumulus**, *a heap*: accumulate, accumulation.
- Cupio**, *I long for, I covet*: cupidity.

- Cura, a care:** cure, curious, curiosity, sinecure, curator, accurate.
- Curro, cursum, I run:** current, cursory, precursor, occur, discourse, concur, excursion.
- Curtus, short:** curtall,
- Curvus, crooked:** curve, curvature.
- Custodia, charge:** custody.
- Cutis, the skin:** cuticle.
- Damnum, loss:** condemn, damage, damnatory, damn.
- Debeo, debitum, I owe:** debt, debit, debtor.
- Debilis, weak:** debility, debilitate.
- Decem, ten:** decimal, decimate, December, decennial.
- Decet, it becomes; decens, becoming:** decent, indecent, decorous.
- Decor, beauty:** decorate, decoration.
- Dens, dentis, a tooth:** dentist, indenture, dental, trident.
- Densus, thick:** dense, condense, density.
- Deterior, worse:** deteriorate, deterioration.
- Deus, God:** deist, deity, deify, deodand, deification.
- Dexter, right-handed:** dexterity.
- Dico, dicatum, I proclaim:** indicate, indication, indicator.
- Dico, dictum, I say:** diction, predict, dictate, verdict.
- Dies, a day:** diary, diurnal, dial.
- Digitus, a finger:** digit, digitate.
- Dignus, worthy:** dignity, indignity, condign, dignify.
- Disco, I learn:** disciple, discipline, disciplinarian.
- Divido, divisum, I divide:** division, dividend, divisible, indivisible, divisor, subdivide, individual.
- Divinus, pertaining to God:** divine, divinity.
- Do, datum, I give:** date, addition, add, donor, data, dative.
- Doceo, doctum, I teach:** docile, doctor, docility, doctrine.
- Doleo, I grieve:** doleful, condole, indolent, dolorous.
- Dominus, a master:** domineer, dominant, domain, predominate.
- Domo, I subdue:** indomitable.
- Domus, a house:** dome, domestic, domicile.
- Dormio, I sleep:** dormant, dormitory.
- Dorsum, the back:** endorse, dorsal.
- Dubius, doubtful:** doubt, dubious, dubitation, indubitable.
- Duco, ductum, I lead or draw:** duct, induce, seduce, ductile, duke, introduce, induct, product, produce.
- Dulcis, sweet:** dulcet, dulcimer.
- Duo, two:** duel, duplicate, dual, duet.
- Durus, hard or lasting:** durable, duration, endure, indurate.
- Ebrius, drunk:** ebriety, inebriate, sobriety.
- Edo, I eat:** edible, edacity, esculent.

- Ego, I :** egotist, egotism.
- Emo, emptum, I buy :** redeem, redemption, ransom, exempt.
- Emulus, a rival :** emulate, emulation, emulous.
- Eo, itum, I go :** exit, initial.
- Equus, a horse :** equestrian.
- Erro, I wander :** err, aberration, error, erroneous.
- Exemplum, an example :** sample, exemplify.
- Expedio, I set free :** expedite, expedition.
- Experior, I try :** experience, expert, experiment.
- Extex, outward :** external.
- Extra, beyond :** extraordinary, extravagant.
- Fabex, a worker :** fabric, fabricate.
- Fabula, a story :** fable.
- Facies, the face :** deface, efface, facial, fashion.
- Facilis, easy :** facility, facilitate, faculty.
- Facio, factum, I do, I make :** fact, effect, perfect.
- Fallo, falsum, I deceive :** false, fallible, fallacious.
- Fama, a report :** fame, infamous.
- Fames, hunger :** famine, famish.
- Familia, a family :** familiar, familiarity.
- Fanum, a temple :** fane, profane, fanatic.
- For, fatum, I speak :** fate, affable, infant, preface, ineffable.
- Fatigo, I tire :** fatigue.
- Fatuus, foolish :** fatuity.
- Febris, a fever :** febrile.
- Felix, felicitas, happy :** felicity, felicitous.
- Femina, a woman :** feminine, effeminate.
- Fero, latum, I carry :** ferry, confer, defer, collate, fertile, conference, oblation.
- Ferox, savage :** ferocious, ferocity.
- Ferrum, iron :** farrier, faraginous.
- Ferveo, I am hot, I boil :** fervid, fervour, effervesce.
- Festus, joyful :** feast, festal, festival, festive, festivity.
- Fido, I trust :** confide, fidelity, confidence, perfidy, affiance, diffidence, perfidious.
- Figo, fixum, I fix :** fix, affix, prefix, fixture.
- Filius, a son ; filia, a daughter :** filial, affiliate.
- Filum, a thread, a feature :** file, filament, profile.
- Findo, fissum, I divide :** fissure.
- Fingo, fictum, I form, I feign :** feign, fiction, figure, effigy.
- Finis, an end :** finite, final, finish, infinite, infinitive.
- Firmus, strong :** firm, confirm, affirm, confirmation.
- Fiscus, a great money bag :** fiscal, confiscate.
- Flagro, I am on fire :** conflagration, flagrant.
- Flamma, a flame :** inflammation, flame, inflame.
- Flecto, flexum, I bend :** flexible, reflex, infect.

Fligo, sictum, I dash against the ground: afflict, confict, profligate, inflict.

Flo, flatum, I blow: inflate, flute, flatulent.

Flos, floris, a flower: floral, florist, flourish.

Fluo, fluxum, I flow: flux, fluent, fluid, fluctuate, influx.

Fodio, fossum, I dig: fossil, fosse.

Folium, a leaf: folio, foliage.

Fecundus, fruitful: fecund, fecundity.

Foedus, a league: federal, confederate.

Fons, a fountain: font, fount.

Forma, a shape: form, uniform, conform, reform, reformation, formula.

Formido, dread: formidable.

Foro, I bore: perforate.

Fortis, strong: fortress, fortify, fort, fortitude, effort.

Fors, chance: fortuitous, fortune.

Forum, a market place: forum, forensic.

Frango, fractum, I break: fracture, fraction, fragile, frail, refract, infract, infringe, fragment.

Frater, a brother: fraternal, friar, fraternity.

Fraus, fraudis, deceit: fraud, defraud, fraudulent.

Fraenum, a bridle: refrain.

Frigeo, I grow cold: frigid, refrigerate, frigidity.

Fruor, I enjoy: fruit, fruition, fructify, frugal.

Frustra, in vain: frustrate.

Frons, the forehead: front, affront, frontlet.

Fugio, I flee: fugitive, refuge, subterfuge.

Fulgeo, I shine: effulgent, effulgence, refulgent.

Fulmen, fulminis, a thunderbolt: fulminate, fulmination.

Fumus, smoke: fumigate, perfume.

Fundo, fusum, I pour out: fuse, diffuse, refund, fusible, profuse, confuse, funnel.

Fungor, functum, I discharge: function, functionary.

Fundus, the bottom: foundation, profound, profundity, fundamental.

Funus, a burial: funeral.

Fur, a thief: furtive.

Garrio, I prate: garrulous.

Gelu, frost: gelid, congeal, jelly.

Gens, gentis, a race or nation: gentile, genteel, gentle.

Genus, generis, a kind: general, generate, degenerate, regenerate, generic.

Germen, germinis, a bud: germ, germinate.

Gero, gestum, I carry: gesture, gesticulate, jest, suggest, digestion.

Gigas, gigantis, a giant: gigantic.

Gligno, genitum, I beget: genius, genial, generous, progeny, indigenous, ingenious.

Glacies, ice: glacier, glass, glaze.

Gladius, a sword: gladiator.

- Glans, glandis, an acorn :** gland, glandular.
- Globus, a globe :** globular, globule.
- Glomus, a clew of thread :** conglomerate, agglomerate.
- Gloria, glory :** glory, glorify, inglorious.
- Gluten, glue :** glutinous.
- Glutio, I swallow :** glut, deglutition.
- Gradior, gressum, I go step by step :** grade, degrade, retrograde, progress, digress, ingress, egress, aggressor.
- Grandis, large :** grand, grandee, aggrandise.
- Granum, a grain :** granite, granary, garner.
- Gratia, favour :** grace, gratuitous, congratulate, ingrate.
- Gratus, thankful :** grateful, gratitude.
- Gravis, heavy :** grave, grief, gravity, gravitation.
- Grex, gregis, a flock :** gregarious, aggregate, egregious.
- Gula, the throat :** gully, gullet.
- Gusto, I taste :** gust, disgust.
- Habeo, habitum, I have :** habit, habitable, inhabit, prohibit, cohabit.
- Haereo, haesum, I stick :** adhere, hesitate, adhesion.
- Haeres, haereditis, an heir :** hereditary, heritable, inheritance, inherit.
- Halo, I breathe :** inhale, exhale, exhalation.
- Haurio, haustum, I draw :** exhaust, exhaustion.
- Homo, a man :** humane, humanity, human, homicide.
- Honor, honour :** honest, dishonour, honourable.
- Hora, an hour :** horoscope.
- Horreo, I dread :** abhor, horror, horrid.
- Hortor, I encourage :** exhort, hortative.
- Hortus, a garden :** horticulture.
- Hospes, hospitis, a guest :** host, hospital, hospitable.
- Hostis, an enemy :** hostile, hostility.
- Humeo, I am wet :** humour, humid, humidity.
- Humus, the ground; humilis, low :** inhum, exhume, humility, humiliation, posthumous.
- Idem, the same :** identity, identical.
- Ignis, fire :** igneous, ignite.
- Imago, imaginis, an image or likeness :** imagine, imagery.
- Impero, I command :** imperial, imperious, empire, imperative.
- Imitor, I imitate :** imitation, inimitable.
- Inanis, empty :** inanity.
- Index, indicis, an informer :** indicate, indicative, indicatory.
- Induo, I put on :** indue, endow, endowment.
- Inferus, low :** inferior, inferiority, infernal.
- Ingenium, skill :** engine, engineer.
- Initium, beginning :** initial, initiate.

- Insula**, *an island*: insular, peninsula.
- Integer**, *entire and whole*: integral, integrity, integrate.
- Intus**, *within*: internal.
- Invito**, *I call*: invite, invitation.
- Ira**, *anger*: ire, irascible.
- Irrito**, *I affront*: irritate, irritation.
- Iter**, *itineris, a journey*: itinerant.
- Jaceo**, *I lie down*: adjacent, interjacent.
- Jacio**, *jactum, I throw*: abject, deject, object, eject, inject, objection, subject, projectile, conjecture.
- Janua**, *a gate*: janitor.
- Jocus**, *a jest*: joke, jocose, jocular, jocund.
- Jubilum**, *a joyful shout*: jubilee.
- Judex**, *judicis, a judge*: judicial, judge, judicature, prejudice.
- Jugulum**, *the throat*: jugular.
- Jugum**, *a yoke*: abjugate, conjugate, conjugal.
- Jungo**, *junctum, I join*: joint, junction, conjunction, subjunctive, subjoin, adjunct.
- Juro**, *I swear*: abjure, juror, perjury, conjure.
- Jupiter**, *jovis, the name of a false god*: jovial.
- Jus**, *juris, right, law*: justice, jurisdiction, injure, jurisprudence, jury.
- Justus**, *right*: unjust, adjust.
- Juvenis**, *a youth*: juvenile, junior.
- Juvo**, *jutum, I help*: adjutant, coadjutor.
- Labor**, *toil, labour*: laborious, elaborate.
- Labor**, *lapsus, I slip*: lapse, relapse, collapse.
- Lac**, *lactis, milk*: lacteal.
- Lacero**, *I tear*: lacerate.
- Lacio**, *I entice*: elicit.
- Laedo**, *laesum, I hurt by wounding*: lesion, collision.
- Lambo**, *I lick*: lambent.
- Lamina**, *a thin plate*: laminated.
- Languo**, *I faint*: languid, languor.
- Lanx**, *a scale*: balance.
- Lapis**, *lapidis, a stone*: dilapidate, lapidary.
- Lardum**, *bacon*: lard.
- Latus**, *lateris, the side*: lateral.
- Latus**, *wide*: latitude.
- Laus**, *laudis, praise*: laud, laudatory.
- Lavo**, *I wash*: lave, lavatory.
- Laxus**, *loose*: lax, laxative, laxity, relaxation.
- Lego**, *legatum, I send*: legate, legacy.
- Lego**, *lectum, I choose, I gather, I read*: legible, elect, lecture, neglect, collect.
- Lenis**, *gentle*: lenient, lenity.
- Levo**, *I lift or raise*: elevate, levity, lever.
- Lex**, *legis, law*: legal, legislate, legitimate.
- Libex**, *free*: liberal, illiberal, liberty.
- Libex**, *a book*: library, librarian, libel.

- Libra**, *a balance* : deliberate.
Licet, *it is lawful* : licence, illicit.
Lignum, *wood* : ligneous.
Ligo, **ligatum**, *I bind* : ligament, oblige, religion, ligature.
Limen, **liminis**, *a threshold* : eliminate, preliminary.
Limes, *a boundary* : limit, unlimited.
Linea, *a line* : lineament.
Lingua, *the tongue* : language, linguist.
Linguo, **lictum**, *I leave* : relict, relinquish.
Linum, *flax* : line, lint, lawn.
Liqueo, *I melt* : liquid, liquor.
Lira, *a balk, or a ridge of land left unploughed between the furrows* : delirious. This word *delirious*, then, from **de**, *out of*, and **lira**, *will be—a going out of the furrow in ploughing; wandering in mind*.
Lis, **litis**, *strife* : litigate, litigation.
Litera, *a letter* : literal, literary, literature.
Locus, *a place* : local, locality, collocate.
Longus, *long* : longitude, longevity, elongate, prolong.
Loquor, **locutum**, *I speak* : loquacious, loquacity, elocution, obloquy, circumlocution.
Lubricus, *slippery* : lubricate.
Lucrum, *profit or gain* : lucre, lucrative.
Luctor, *I wrestle* : reluctant.
Lucubro, *I study by candle-light* : lucubrate.
- Ludo**, **lusum**, *I play* : allude, delude, ludicrous, delusion, illusion.
Lumen, **luminis**, *light* : luminary, liminous, illuminate.
Luna, *the moon* : lunacy, lunatic, lunar, sublunary.
Luo, **lutum**, *I wash* : dilute, ablution, pollute, alluvial, antedeluvian.
Lustrum, *purgation or a purifying* : lustre, illustrate.
Lux, **lucis**, *light* : lucid, elucidate, pellucid.
Luxura, *superfluity* : luxury, luxuria, luxurious.
Macex, *lean* : emaciate, meagre.
Macula, *a spot* : immaculate.
Magister, *a master* : master, magistrate, magisterial.
Magnus, *great* : magnitude, magnificent.
Major, *greater* : majority, majestic, mayor.
Malus, *bad* : malady, malice.
Mamma, *a breast* : mammalia, mamma.
Mando, *I order* : command, mandate, commend.
Malleus, *a hammer* : mallet, malleable.
Mando, *I chew, I eat* : manger, mandible.
Maneo, *I stay* : permanent, remain, manse, mansion.
Mano, *I flow* : emanate, emanation.
Manus, *the hand* : manual, manacle, manuscript.
Mappa, *a table napkin* : map, mop.
Mare, *the sea* : marine, mariner.

- Mars, martis, the god of war :** march, martial.
- Mas, maris, a male :** marry, masculine.
- Massa, a lump :** mass, massa-cre.
- Mater, matris, a mother :** maternal, matrimony, matron, matriculate.
- Maturus, ripe :** mature, immature, premature.
- Medeor, I heal :** medical, remedy.
- Medius, middle :** medium, mediator, mediate, immediate.
- Materia, stuff or substance :** matter, material.
- Mel, mellis, honey :** mellifluous.
- Melior, better :** ameliorate, amelioration.
- Memor, mindful :** memoir, remember, memory, commemorate, memorandum.
- Menda, a blemish or fault :** mend, emendation.
- Mendax, lying :** mendacious, mendacity.
- Mens, mentis, the mind :** mental, comment.
- Mendicus, a beggar :** mendicant.
- Meco, meatum, I glide along or flow :** permeate.
- Mereo, meritum, I deserve :** merit, meritorious.
- Mergo, mersum, I plunge :** emerge, submerge, immerse.
- Metior, mensum, I measure :** mete, mensuration.
- Merx, mercis, goods, commodities :** merchant, merchandise, commerce.
- Migro, migratum, I remove from one place to another to dwell in :** migrate, emigrate, immigrate.
- Miles, militis, a soldier :** militant, military, militate.
- Mille, a thousand :** millennium, million, milfoil, millennial.
- Minister, a servant :** minister, administer.
- Minor, I threaten :** menace.
- Minor, less ; minuo, I lessen :** minority, diminish, diminution, diminutive.
- Mirus, wonderful :** miracle, admirable, admire.
- Misceo, mixtum, I mingle :** miscellany, mix, unmixed.
- Miser, wretched :** misery, commiserate, miserable.
- Mitigo, I soothe :** mitigate, mitigation.
- Mitto, missum, I send :** mission, admit, permit, remit, missionary, admission.
- Modus, a measure :** mode, moderate, modesty.
- Moca, a millstone :** molar, im-molate, emolument.
- Moles, a heap :** molest, mole, demolish.
- Mollis, soft :** mollify, emollient.
- Moneo, I warn, I remind :** monitor, monument, admonish.
- Mons, montis, a mountain :** mount, dismount.
- Monstro, I point out :** demonstrate, remonstrate.

- Morbus, disease:** morbid, morbidity.
- Mordeo, morsum, I bite, I gnaw:** morsel, remorse.
- Mors, death:** mortal, immortal, mortality, mortgage.
- Mos, meris, manner:** moral, morality.
- Moveo, motum, I move:** motion, remote, movement.
- Multus, many:** multiply, multitude.
- Munio, munitum, I fortify:** ammunition.
- Mundus, the world:** mundane.
- Munus, muneris, a gift:** munificent, remunerate.
- Murus, a wall:** mural, immure.
- Musa, a song:** music, museum, amuse.
- Musculus, a tendon:** muscular.
- Muto, mutatum, I change:** mutable, immutable, commute, mutation.
- Narro, I relate:** narrative.
- Nascor, natum, I am born:** natal, nation, nascent, nature, innate.
- Nasus, the nose:** nasal.
- Nato, I swim:** natant, supernatant.
- Navis, a ship:** navy, navigate, navigation.
- Nebula, a cloud:** nebulous, nebular.
- Necto, nexum, I tie:** annex, connect.
- Nego, I deny:** negative, negation, abnegate.
- Negotium, business:** negotiate.
- Nepos, nepotis, a grandson:** nepotism.
- Nervus, a nerve:** nerve, enervate.
- Neuter, not either:** neutral, neutrality.
- Niger, black:** negro.
- Nex, necis, death:** pernicious, internecine.
- Nihil, or nil, nothing:** annihilate, annihilation.
- Niveo, I wink:** connive.
- Noceo, I hurt:** noxious, innocent, obnoxious.
- Nomen, a name:** nominal, nominate, denominate, nominative.
- Non, not:** nonconformist, nonsensical, nonsense.
- Norma, a rule:** normal, enormous, enormity.
- Nosco, notum, I know:** note, notice, notable, notify, notion, noble, ignoble, cognition.
- Novem, nine:** November, novenary.
- Novus, new:** novel, novelty, novice, renovate.
- Nox, noctis, night:** nocturnal, equinox.
- Nubo, nuptum, I marry:** nuptial, connubial.
- Nucleus, a kernel:** nucleus.
- Nudus, naked:** nudity, denude.
- Nugae, trifles:** nugatory.
- Nullus, none:** annul, nullify, nullity.
- Numerus, a number:** enumerate, numeral, innumerable.
- Nuncio, I tell, I announce:** enunciate, pronounce, denounce.
- Nuo, I nod:** innuendo.

- Nutrio, I nourish :** nutritive, nurse, nurture, nutriment, nutrition.
- Obedio, I obey :** obedience, disobey.
- Obliquus, slant :** oblique, obliquity.
- Oblivio, forgetfulness :** oblivion, oblivious.
- Obscurus, dark :** obscurity, obscure.
- Octo, eight :** octave, octavo, October, octagon.
- Oculus, the eye :** ocular, inoculate, oculist.
- Odi, I detest :** odious, odium.
- Odor, smell :** odorous, odoriferous.
- Offendo, offensum, I offend :** inoffensive, unoffended.
- Officium, duty :** office, officer.
- Oleo, I smell :** redolent.
- Oleo, olesco, I grow :** abolish, obsolete.
- Omen, a sign :** ominous, abominable, abominable.
- Omnis, all :** omnipotent, omnipresent, omnibus.
- Onus, a burden :** onerous, exonerate.
- Opacus, dark :** opaque, opacity.
- Opes, riches :** opulent, opulence.
- Opino, I think :** opine, opinion.
- Opto, I wish :** adopt, optative, option.
- Opus, operis, a work :** operate, opera, inoperative.
- Orbis, a circle :** orb, exorbitant, orbit.
- Ordo, ordinis, order :** ordinary, ordain, ordinal, extraordinary.
- Origo, the beginning :** origin, originate.
- Oriox, ortum, I rise :** orient, oriental, abortive.
- Orno, ornatum, I adorn :** ornament, ornamental.
- Oro, I speak, I entreat :** adore, orator, oracle.
- Os, oris, a mouth :** oral.
- Os, ossis, a bone :** osseous, ossify, ossification.
- Oscillo, I swing :** oscillate.
- Ovum, an egg :** oval, oviparous, oviform.
- Pagus, a village :** pagan, peasant, paganism.
- Pallium, a cloak :** pall, palliate.
- Palpo, palpatum, I stroke :** palpable, palpitate.
- Pando, passum, I spread :** expand, expanse.
- Pango, pactum, I fasten :** compact.
- Panis, bread :** pantry.
- Pannus, cloth :** pannel.
- Par, equal :** par, parity, disparity, compare, comparison, disparage.
- Pareo, paritum, I appear :** apparition, apparent, disappear.
- Pario, I bring forth :** parent, oviparous, viviparous.
- Paro, paratum, I prepare :** parade, repair, preparation.
- Pars, partis, a part :** part, partial, particular, apartment, portion, impart, parse, participate, particle.
- Pasco, pastum, I feed :** pastor, pasture, repast.
- Passus, a step :** pace, compass, trespass.

- Pateo, I lie open :** patent.
- Pater, a father :** paternal, patron, patrimony.
- Patria, one's country or native soil :** patriot, patriotic.
- Patior, passus, I suffer :** patient, impatient, passion, passive.
- Patro, I commit :** perpetrate.
- Pauci, few :** paucity.
- Pauper, poor :** poverty, pauperism, pauper.
- Pavio, I beat down :** pave, pavement.
- Pax, pacis, peace :** pacify, pacific, appease, peaceable.
- Pecco, I sin :** peccant, im-peccant, peccavi.
- Pectus, pectoris, the breast :** expectorate.
- Pecunia, money :** pecuniary.
- Pecus, cattle :** peculiar, peculate.
- Pellis, the skin or hide of a beast ; parchment :** peel, pellicle.
- Pello, pulsum, I drive, I beat :** pulse, repulse, repel, expulsion.
- Pendeo, to hang :** pendant, depend, impend, suspend.
- Pendo, pensum, I weigh :** expend, expenses, recompense, pension, pensive.
- Pene, almost :** peninsula.
- Penetro, penetratum, I pierce :** penetrate.
- Penuria, want :** penury, penurious.
- Perdo, I lose :** perdition.
- Perior, peritus, I try :** experiment.
- Persona, a mask :** person, personal, personify.
- Pes, pedis, a foot :** pedestal, pedestrian, expedite, expedition, impede, biped.
- Pestis, a plague :** pestilence, pestilent, pester.
- Peto, petitem, I seek :** petition, competent, appetite.
- Pila, a ball :** pill, pellet.
- Pilo, I steal :** pilfer, pillage, compile.
- Pingo, pictum, I paint :** picture, picturesque.
- Pinna, the fin of a fish, feather of a bird, a nicked battlement in a wall, or fortification :** pinnacle, pinion.
- Pio, piatum, to atone for :** piacular, expiate.
- Piscis, a fish :** piscatory.
- Pistillum, a pestle :** pistil, pistillate.
- Pius, religious :** pious, piety, impiety.
- Placeo, I please :** placid, complacence, placable, complacent, pleasant.
- Placo, I appease :** implacable.
- Plango, plantum, I strike, I lament :** complain.
- Planta, the sole of the foot, a plant :** supplant, transplant, plantation.
- Planus, level :** plain, explain, plane.
- Plaudo, plausum, I make a noise by clapping the hands in token of applause :** plausible, plaudit, applause, applaud.
- Plebs, the common people :** plebeian.

Plecto, plexum, I weave, I twist: perplex, perplexity, complex.

Plenus, full: plenary, plenitude, replenish.

Pleo, pletum, I fill: complete, replete, supply, complement.

Plico, plicatum, I fold: complicate, duplicate, implicit, surplice, pliable, implicate, explicit.

Floro, I bewail: deplore, explore, implore.

Plumbum, lead: plumber, plummet.

Plumula, a small feather: plumule.

Plus, pluris, more: plural, plurality, surplus, perfect.

Pluvia, rain: pluvial, pluvial.

Poena, penalty, punishment: pain, penal, penalty, penance, repent.

Polio, politum, I smoothen: polish, polite, politeness.

Pollen, pollenis, fine flour, or dust that flies in the mill: pollen.

Polus, a pole: polar, polarity.

Pomum, fruit: pomace.

Pondus, ponderis, a weight: ponder, ponderous, pound, preponderate.

Pono, positum, I place, I put: pose, depose, expose, deponent, compose, repose, postpone, opposite, opposition, position, preposition.

Pons, pontis, a bridge: pontiff, pontoon.

Populus, people: popular, populous, depopulate, publish.

Porcus, a hog: pork, porcine, porcupine.

Porto, I carry: portable, import, export, important, support, porter.

Porta, a door: portal, portico.

Potsum, I am able: possible, impossible.

Post, after: posterity, postpone, postscript.

Postulo, postulatum, I demand: postulate, expostulate, postulatory.

Potens, powerful: potent, omnipotent.

Poto, potatum, I drink: potation.

Praeda, booty, prey: predatory, prey, depredation.

Prandium, a breakfast: postprandial.

Pravus, wicked: depraved, depravity.

Precor, I pray: deprecate, precarious.

Prehendo, I lay hold of: apprehend, comprehend, reprehensible.

Premo, pressum, I press: impress, oppress, express.

Pretium, a price: precious, appreciate, depreciate.

Primus, first: primary, primeval, primitive.

Princeps, chief: prince, principal, principality.

Privo, I deprive: private, deprive, deprivation.

Probo, I try, I test: probable, probe, prove, approbation, probity, reprobation.

Proles, progeny: prolific.

- Pronus**, *bending forwards* : prone.
- Propago**, *I spread* : propagate, propagation.
- Prope**, *near* : propinquity.
- Proprius**, *peculiar, one's own* : proper, property, appropriate, propriety.
- Prosperous**, *successful* : prosperity.
- Proximus**, *nearest or next* : proximate, approximate, approach.
- Prudens**, *sagacious* : prudent, jurisprudence.
- Prurio**, *I itch, I desire to do something* : prurient.
- Public**, *public* : republic, republican.
- Pudeo**, *I am ashamed* : impudence.
- Puer**, *a boy* : puerile, puerility.
- Pugno**, *I fight* : pugnacious, pugnacity, impugn.
- Pullus**, *the young of any animal, the shoot of a tree* : pullet, poult.
- Pulmo**, *pulminis, the lungs* : pulmonary.
- Pulvis**, *pulveris, dust* : pulverise.
- Pumex**, *a pumice-stone* : pounce.
- Pungo**, *punctum, I prick* : puncture, punctual, punctuation, expunge, pungent.
- Punio**, *I punish* : punitive, impunity.
- Pupillus**, *a fatherless manchild within eye, and under ward* : a pupil.
- Purgo**, *I cleanse* : purge, purgation, purgative, purgatory, expurgate.
- Purus**, *pure* : purity, impurity, purified.
- Pusillus**, *weak, cowardly* : pusillanimous, pusillanimity.
- Puto**, *putatum, I lop, I prune, I think* : putative, amputate, impute, dispute, compute.
- Putris**, *rotten* : putred, putrefaction, putrescence.
- Quaero**, *quaesitum, I ask, I seek* : query, quest, question, inquire, inquisitive, acquisition.
- Qualis**, *of what sort, such as* : quality, qualify.
- Quatio**, *quassum, I shake* : discuss, percussion.
- Quatuor**, *four* : quarter, square.
- Quantus**, *how great, how much* : quantity.
- Queror**, *I complain* : querelous.
- Quies**, *quietum, rest* : quiet, quietude, acquiesce, requiem.
- Quinque**, *five* : quinquennial, quintessence.
- Quot**, *how many* : quotient, quota.
- Rabies**, *madness* : rabid, rave.
- Radius**, *a rod, a beam of the sun, a ray* : radiate, ray, radiance.
- Radix**, *a rood* : radical, eradicate.
- Rado**, *rasum, I shave, I scrape* : razor, erase.
- Ramus**, *a branch* : ramify, ramification.

- Rapio, raptum**, *I seize*: rapture, rapacious, rape, rapacity.
- Rarus, thin**: rare, rarity, rarify.
- Ratio, reason**: rational, irrational.
- Ratus, fixed**: rate, ratify, ration.
- Recens, recentis, new**: recent.
- Rego, rectum, I rule**: regular, direct, indirect.
- Repo, reptum, I creep**: reptile, surreptitious.
- Res, a thing**: real, reality.
- Retes, a net**: retina, reticule.
- Rex, a king**: regal.
- Rideo, I laugh**: ridicule, deride.
- Rigeo, I am stiff, I am frozen**: rigid, rigidity, rigour.
- Rigo, rigatum, I water**: irrigate, irrigation.
- Rivus, a stream**: rival, arrival, river.
- Robur, an oak, strength**: robust, corroborate.
- Rodo, rosum, I gnaw**: corrode, corrosion.
- Rogo, rogatum, I ask**: rogation, interrogative, prodig, arrogate.
- Rosa, a rose**: primrose.
- Rota, a wheel**: rote, rotation, rotatory.
- Rotundus, round**: rotundity, rotund.
- Ruber, red**: ruby, robin.
- Rudis, rude**: rudiment, erudite.
- Ruga, a wrinkle, a furrow**: corrugate, corrugant, rugose.
- Rumen, the throat, the cud**: ruminate.
- Rumpo, ruptum, I break**: rupture, eruption, bankrupt, interrupt.
- Rus, ruris, the country**: rural, rustic.
- Sacer, holy, sacred**: sacrament, sacrifice, sacerdotal, consecrate, desecrate.
- Sagax, wise**: sagacious, sagacity, sage, presage.
- Sal, salt**: saline, salary, salad.
- Salio, saltum, I leap**: salient, salmon, assail, insult, result.
- Salus, salutis, safety**: salute, salutation, salutary.
- Salvus, safe**: salvation, saviour, salve.
- Saliva, spittle**: salivate.
- Sanctus, holy**: sanctity, saint, sanctify, sanction.
- Sanguis, blood**: sanguinary, sanguine.
- Sanus, sound**: sane, insane, insanity.
- Sapio, I taste, I am wise**: sapient, insipid.
- Satis, enough**: sate, satisfy, satiate, saturate.
- Scala, a ladder**: scale.
- Scando, scansum, I climb**: ascend, scan, ascension, descend.
- Scindo, scissum, I cut**: rescind, scissors.
- Scintilla, a spark**: scintillate.
- Scio, I know**: science, conscience, prescience.
- Scribo, scriptum, I write**: scribe, scripture, describe, manuscript, script.

Scrutor, scrutatum, I examine: inscrutable.

Sculpo, sculptum, I carve: sculpture.

Scutum, a shield: escutcheon, esquire.

Seco, sectum, I cut: sect, section, bisect, insect.

Seculum, the world, the age: secular.

Secundus, second: secondary.

Sedeo, sessum, I sit, I remain: sedan, assess, sedentary, sediment, preside, session, consider, assiduous.

Sedo, sedatum, I mitigate, I ease: sedate.

Semen, seminis, seed: seminary, seminal, disseminate.

Semi, half: semi-weekly.

Senex, old: senior, senator, senate.

Sentio, sensum, I perceive by the senses: sentient, sensual, sense, consent, sentence.

Septem, seven: September, septennial.

Sepelio, sepultum, I bury: sepulchre.

Sequor, secutum, I follow: second, sequence, consequence, execute, persecute, prosecute, subsequent.

Seror, sertum, I set in order, I join: series, sermon, insert, exert.

Serpo, I creep: serpent.

Serra, a saw: serrated.

Servio, I obey: serve, servant, servile, subserve, servitude.

Serve, servatum, I keep: preserve, reserve, observe, observation.

Severus, severe: persevere.

Sex, six: sextant.

Sido, sessum, I settle, I sink to the bottom: reside, subside.

Sidus, sideris, a star: sidereal.

Signum, a sign: significant, signal, design.

Sileo, I am still: silent.

Silex, silicis, flint: silicious.

Silva, a wood: savage.

Similis, like: similar, simulate, assimilate, simile.

Simul, at the same time: simultaneous.

Sine, without: sinecure, sincere.

Sinus, the bosom: insinuate.

Sisto, statum, I stand: insist, resist, assist, subsist.

Socius, a companion: social, associate.

Situs, position: site, situation.

Sol, the sun: solar, solstice, parasol.

Solidus, firm: solid, consolidate, solder.

Solor, I comfort: console, solace, consolation.

Solum, the ground: soil.

Solus, alone: sole, solitude, desolate.

Soleo, I am accustomed: insolence.

Solve, solutum, I loosen: absolve, solve, resolution, soluble, solvent.

Somnus, sleep: somnambulist.

Sono, I sound: sonorous, sound, consonant, unison.

- Sopo, soponis, soap** : soponaceous.
- Sopor, a sound sleep** : soporific.
- Sorbeo, sorptum, I drink up** : absorb, absorption.
- Sordidus, dirty, despicable** : sordid.
- Sors, sortis, a lot** : sort, assortment.
- Spargo, sparsum, I scatter** : asperse, disperse.
- Spatium, space** : spacious, ex-patiate.
- Specio, spectrum, I see, I behold** : special, aspect, despise, specimen, spectacles, inspect.
- Spero, I hope** : despair, desperate, prosper.
- Spiro, I breathe** : inspire, conspire, spirit, aspirate.
- Spina, a thorn, the chine-bone of the back** : spine, spinal.
- Splendeo, I shine** : splendid, splendour.
- Spolium, plunder** : spoil, spoliation.
- Spondeo, sponsum, I promise freely, I engage** : respond, sponsor, spouse, despond.
- Spondeo, of his own accord, willingly** : spontaneous, spontaneity.
- Stagnum, standing water** : stagnant.
- Stella, a star** : stellar, constellation.
- Sterilis, barren** : sterile.
- Sterno, stratum, I strike down, I lay flat** : prostrate, consternation, stratum, strata.
- Stigma, a mark or brand mostly on the forehead of fugitives** : stigmatisa.
- Stilla, a drop** : instil, distil, distillery.
- Stimulus, a spur, a goad** : stimulate, stimulant.
- Stipo, stipatum, I fill up close** : constipate, constipation.
- Stirps, stirpis, a root** : extirpate.
- Sto, statum, I stand** : state, stable, instant, constant, armistice, statute, substance.
- Stringo, strictum, I bind** : strict, stringent, restrict.
- Struo, structum, I build** : construct, instruct, structure.
- Studeo, I desire** : study, studious.
- Stupeo, I am astonished** : stupid, stupidity.
- Stultus, a fool** : stultify.
- Suadeo, I advise** : suasion, persuade.
- Suavis, sweet, pleasant** : suavity.
- Sublimis, high** : sublime, sublimity.
- Sudo, sudatum, I sweat** : sudorific.
- Sugo, suctum, I suck** : suction.
- Summus, highest** : summit.
- Sumo, sumptum, I take** : assume, presume, consumption.
- Sum, I am : esse, to be : ens, entis, existence : futurum, about to be : entity, future, futurity.**
- Surgo, surrectum, I rise** : insurrection, insurgent, resurrection.
- Tabula, a table** : tabular.
- Taberna, a hut** : tabernacle.

Taceo, tacitum, I am silent: tacit, taciturn, reticent.

Tango, tactum, I touch: tact, tangent, tangible, contagious.

Tardus, slow: tardy, retard.

Tego, tectum, I cover: protect, detect.

Tela, a web: toil, toilsome.

Temno, temptum, I despise: contempt, contemptible.

Temere, indiscreetly: temerity.

Temetum, strong wine: abstemious.

Tempero, I moderate: temperance, intemperance, temper.

Tempus, temporis, time: tense, temporal, extempore, contemporary.

Tendo, tensum, I stretch: contend, intend, distend.

Tenebrae, darkness: tenebrous.

Teneo, I hold: tenable, tenacious, tenement.

Tento, I try: tentative, attempt.

Terminus, a boundary: terminate, determinate.

Tenuis, thin: attenuate.

Tepidus, warm: tepid.

Tergo, tersum, I wipe, I scour: terse.

Tero, tritum, I rub: trite, detrimental, contrite.

Terra, the earth: terrestrial, terrace, inter, terrier.

Terreo, I frighten: terror, deter, terrible.

Testis, a witness: testify, detest, attest, intestate, testament.

Texo, textum, I weave: text, texture, pretext, context.

Thronus, a throne: dethrone.

Timeo, I fear: timid, timidity, timorous, intimidate.

Tingo, tinctum, I dip, I dye: tincture.

Titulus, a title: titular, entitle.

Torpeo, I am numb: torpid, torpedo.

Torqueo, tortum, I twist: torture, retort, extort, torment.

Torreo, tostum, I parch: torrid, toast, torrent.

Totus, whole: total, totality.

Toxicum, poison: intoxicate.

Traho, tractum, I draw: attract, abstract, tract, subtract, contract.

Trado, traditum, I give up: traitor, tradition.

Tremo, I shake: tremble, tremulous, tremor.

Trepido, I tremble: trepidation, intrepid.

Tres, tria, three: treble, trident, trinity, trivial.

Tribuo, tributum, I give: distribute, attribute, retribution.

Tribus, a tribe: tribe, tribune.

Trical, any let or impediment: intrigue, extricate.

Trudo, trusum, I thrust: intrude, obtrude, extrude, abstruse.

Tuber, a swelling: tubercle, protuberance.

Tubus, a pipe: tube.

Tucor, I see, I protect: tutor, tuition, intuitive.

- Tumeo**, *I swell*: tumid, tumult, tomb, contumely.
- Tundo**, **tusum**, *I beat*: confusion.
- Turba**, *a crowd*: turbid, disturb, turbulent.
- Turpis**, *disgraceful*: turpitude.
- Turris**, *a tower*: turret.
- Ultra**, *beyond*; **ulterior**, *farther*; **ultimus**, *farthest*: ulterior, ultimate, ultimatum, penult, antepenult.
- Umbra**, *a shade*: umbrage, umbrella, umbrageous.
- Unguo**, **unctum**, *I anoint*: unguent, unction.
- Unda**, *a wave*: undulate, abundance.
- Unus**, *one*: unit, unity, union, triune.
- Urbs**, *a city*: urbanity, urbane, suburban.
- Urgeo**, *I press*: urge, urgent, urgency.
- Uro**, **ustum**, *I burn*: combustion, incombustible.
- Utor**, **usus**, *I use*: usual, use, utility, usage.
- Uxor**, *a wife*: uxorious.
- Vacca**, *a cow*: vaccinate, vaccination.
- Vaco**, **vacatum**, *I am empty*, *I am at leisure*: vacate, vacation, vacant, evacuate, vacuum.
- Vado**, **vasum**, *I go*: evade, evasion, vade - mecum, wade.
- Vagor**, *I wander*: vagrant, vagabond.
- Valeo**, *I am strong*: valid, avail, prevail, invalid.
- Vapor**, *steam*: vapour, evaporate, vapid.
- Vas**, **vasis**, *a vessel*: vase, vascular.
- Vanus**, *empty*: vanity.
- Valvae**, *folding-doors*: valve.
- Varius**, *different*: variable, invariable, vary.
- Vastus**, *desolate, large*: vast, devastate, waste.
- Vates**, *a prophet*: vaticinate.
- Vegeto**, **vegetatum**, *I quicken*: vegetate, vegetation.
- Veho**, **vectum**, *I carry*: convey, vehicle.
- Velox**, *swift*: velocity.
- Velum**, *a covering*: veil, reveal, develop, envelope.
- Vendo**, *I sell*: vend, venal, vendor.
- Vena**, *a blood-vessel*: vein, venous.
- Venenum**, *poison*: envenom.
- Veneror**, **veneratus**, *I worship*: venerable, veneration.
- Venio**, **ventum**, *I come*: venture, prevent, advent, convene, convenit.
- Venia**, *pardon*: venial.
- Ventus**, *the wind*: ventilation.
- Venter**, *the belly*: ventriloquism.
- Venox**, *I hunt*: venison.
- Vex**, *the spring*: vernal.
- Verbum**, *a word*: verb, adverb, verbal, verbosity.
- Vergo**, *I incline*: diverge, divergence.
- Vermis**, *a worm*: vermin.

Verto, versum, I turn: verse, convert, pervert, version, adverse, advertise, subvert, divorce, traverse, universe.

Verus, true: very, veracity, averment, verify.

Vestis, a garment: vestment, vesture, invest, divest.

Vernaculus, native: vernacular.

Vetus, veteris, old: veteran.

Via, a way: deviate, obviate, trivial, viaticum.

Vicis, change: vicar, viceroy, vicissitude, vicegerent.

Video, visum, I see: advise, visible, visage, evidence, provide, provide, providence.

Vinco, victum, I conquer: convince, victor, victim, vanquish.

Vigil, watchful: vigilant.

Vigeo, I grow: vegetable.

Vigor, strength: vigour, vigorous, invigorate.

Vir, a man: triumvirate.

Virtus, force, strength: virtue, virtual.

Vita, life: vital, vitality.

Vitium, vice: vitiate.

Vitrum, glass: vitreous, vitriol.

Vinum, wine: vinegar, vintage.

Virga, a rod: verger.

Voco, I call: vocal, advocate, vocabulary, invoke, vowel.

Vito, I avoid: inevitable.

Volo, volatum, I fly: volatile.

Volo, I will: volition, voluntary, volunteer.

Vivo, I live: vivacity, vivify, victuals.

Volvo, volutum, I roll: evolve, devolve, volume, voluble, involution.

Voro, I devour: voracious, carnivorous.

Voveo, votum, I make a vow: vow, devote, votary, votive.

Vulcanus, the god of fire: volcano.

Vulgus, the common people: vulgar, divulge.

Vulnus, vulneris, a wound: vulnerable, invulnerable.

Vilis, of little value: vilify.

Virus, poison: virulent.

GREEK ROOTS from which ENGLISH WORDS are DERIVED:—

Achos, pain: ache.

Adelphos, a brother: Philadelphia.

Aēr, the air: aeronaut.

Ago, I lead: pedagogue, demagogue.

Agon, a contest: agony, antagonist.

Agora, a market-place, a discourse: allegory, category.

Akmē, a point: acme.

Aisthēsis, a sensation, feeling: anaesthetic.

Akousō, I hear: acoustics.

Akros, the top, high: acrostic, acropolis.

- Ainigma**, a riddle : enigma.
Algos, pain : neuralgia.
Allaxis, a charge : parallax.
Allos, another : allopathy.
Alpha, the first Greek letter : alphabet.
Amphi, all around, on all sides : amphitheatre, amphibious.
Anemos, the wind : anemometer.
Angelos, a messenger : angel, evangelist.
Anēr, andros, a man : monandria.
Anthos, a flower : anthology, polyanthus.
Anthrōpos, a man : anthropology, misanthrope.
Archē, beginning, rule : archetype, monarchy.
Argos, lazy : lethargy.
Aristos, best : aristocracy.
Arctos, a bear, north : arctic.
Arōma, spice : aromatic.
Arithmos, number : arithmetic.
Arsen, a male, robust : arsenic.
Askeō, I exercise : ascetic.
Astēr, a star : asterisk, astronomy.
Athlos, a combat for a prize : athletic.
Atmos, vapour : atmosphere.
Autos, one's self : autocrat, autobiography.
Aulos, a pipe : hydraulic.
Authentes, one who murders with his own hand ; the author of anything : authentic, authenticity.
Axiōma, authority, worth, an admitted proposition : axiom.
- Ballo**, I throw : problem, parable, hyperbole.
Balsamon, balsam : balm.
Bapto, I dip in water, I dye, or colour : baptise.
Baros, weight : barometer.
Basis, foundation, support : base, basis, debase.
Beta, the second Greek letter : alphabet.
Biblion, a book : Bible, bibliography.
Bios, life : biography, amphibious.
Bolbos, an onion : bulb.
Bombos, a noise : bomb.
Botanē, a plant : botany.
Bruo, I bud : embryo.
Charactēr, a mark : character.
Chalups, hard iron : chalybeate.
Chamai, on the ground : camomile.
Chaos, a chasm : chaotic.
Charis, thanks, grace : eucharist.
Cheir, the hand : chirography, surgeon.
Cholē, bile : melancholy.
Chlōros, green : chlorine.
Chordē, a string : chord.
Christos, anointed : Christ, chrism.
Chronos, time : chronic, chronometer.
Chrusos, gold : chrysalis.
Choreo, I retire, retreat : anchorite.
Chumos, juice : chyme.
Chulos, juice : chyle.
Chroma, colour : chrome.

- Gratos**, *strength, rule*: theocracy.
- Daimōn**, *a spirit*: demon, demoniac.
- Daio**, *I divide*: geodetical.
- Daktulos**, *a finger*: dactyle.
- Damaō**, *I overcome*: adamant.
- Deka**, *ten*: decalogue.
- Demos**, *the people*: democrat.
- Dendron**, *a tree*: rhododendron.
- Deō**, *I bind*: diadem.
- Derma**, *the skin*: epidermis.
- Despotes**, *a master, a lord*: despot.
- Deuterios**, *the second*: Deuteronomy.
- Diaita**, *manner of living*: diet.
- Didaskō**, *I teach*: didactic.
- Diplōma**, *that which is double, or folded*: diploma, diplomatic, diplomacy.
- Diskos**, *the orb of the sun*: disk.
- Dotos**, *given*: anecdote.
- Dogma**, *an opinion*: dogmatic, dogmatical.
- Doxa**, *opinion, glory, praise*: orthodox, doxology.
- Drakō**, *a dragon*: dragon.
- Draō**, *I act, I do*: drama, drastic.
- Dromos**, *a race, a running*: dromedary, hippodrome.
- Drūs**, *an oak*: Druid.
- Dunamis**, *power*: dynamics, dynasty.
- Dus**, *pain, difficulty*: dysentery, dyspepsia.
- Echeo**, *I sound, I give oral instruction*: echo, catechise, catechism.
- Eidōlon**, *an image*: idol, idolatry.
- Eidos**, *form*: spheroid.
- Eirōn**, *one who dissembles*: irony.
- Ekklēsia**, *an assembly, the church*: ecclesiastic.
- Elaō**, *I draw out, I drive*: elastic.
- Elegeia**, *a plaintive poem*: elegy.
- Elektron**, *amber*: electricity.
- Eleos**, *alms, compassion*: eleemosynary.
- Emeo**, *I vomit*: emetic.
- Enteron**, *the bowels*: dysentery, mesenteric.
- Entomos**, *cut into*: entomology.
- Epos**, *a word*: epic.
- Erēmas**, *a desert*: eremita, hermit.
- Ergon**, *a work*: surgeon, energy, metallurgy.
- Eschara**, *a scab*: scar, eschar.
- Esō**, *within*: esoteric.
- Ethnos**, *a nation*: ethnology.
- Ethos**, *a custom*: ethical, ethica.
- Etumos**, *true*: etymon, etymology.
- Eu**, *well*: euphony, eulogy.
- Exō**, *outside*: exoteria.
- Gala**, *milk*: galaxy.
- Gameō**, *I marry*: bigamy, polygamy.
- Gastēr**, *the stomach*: gastric.
- Gē**, *the earth*: geography, geology.
- Genos**, *a race, kind, sort*: genealogy.
- Gigas**, *a giant*: gigantic.
- Glōssa** or **glōtta**, *the tongue*: glottis, glossary, polyglot.
- Glukus**, *sweet*: liquorice.

Gluphō, *I carve*: hieroglyphic.
Gnōmōn, *a pointer*: gnomon.
Gonia, *an angle*: diagonal.
Gramma, *a letter*: grammar.
Graphō, *I write*: graphic, telegraph.
Gumnos, *naked*: gymnastic.
Gunē, *a woman*: misogyny, gynarchy.
Guros, *a circle*: gyration.
Gignōskō, *I know*: gnostic, prognostic.
Haima, *blood*: hemorrhage.
Hairēsis, *choice*: heresy.
Harmos, *a fitting*: harmony.
Hedra, *a seat*: cathedral.
Hēlios, *the sun*: heliotrope, aphelion.
Hebdomas, *the seventh*: hebdomad.
Hekaton, *a hundred*: hecatomb.
Hemi, *half*: hemisphere.
Hellen, *a Greek*: Hellenic, Hellenist.
Hemera, *a day*: ephemeral.
Hepta, *seven*: heptarchy.
Heteros, *other*: heterodox.
Hex, *six*: hexameter, hexagon.
Hilaris, *cheerful*: hilarity.
Hieros, *sacred*: hierarchy.
Hippos, *a horse*: hippopotamus.
Hodos, *a way*: method, exodus.
Holos, *whole*: catholic, holocaust.
Homoios, *like*: homœopathy.
Homalos, *even*: anomalous.
Homos, *same*: homogeneous.
Horāma, *a view*: panorama.
Hōra, *an hour*: horoscope.

Horizō, *I bound*: horizon.
Hybris, *abuse*: hybrid.
Hudōr, *water*: hydrogen, hydrostatics.
Hymnos, *a hymn*: anthem.
Hygeia, *the goddess of health*: hygienic.
Ichthus, *a fish*: ichthyology.
Ichnos, *a footprint*: ichnography.
Idios, *peculiar*: idiot, idiom.
Iōta, *the name given to the smallest letter in the Greek alphabet*.
Isos, *equal*: isosceles.
Kalos, *beautiful*: caligraphy.
Kaiō, *kausō*, *I burn*: caustic, cautery.
Kakos, *bad*: cacophony.
Kaluptō, *I conceal*: apocalypse.
Kanōn, *a rule*: canonical, canon.
Kalux, *the cup of a flower*: calyx.
Kardia, *the heart*: cardiac, pericardium.
Kentron, *the centre*: centre, eccentric.
Kephalē, *the head*: cephalic, acephalous.
Keras, *a horn*: rhinoceros.
Klimax, *a ladder*: climax.
Klinō, *I bend*: clinic, clinical, enclitic.
Koimaō, *I sleep*: cemetery.
Kōlon, *a limb, an intestine*: colon, colic.
Koinos, *common*: epicine.
Komē, *hair*: comet.
Komos, *an ode*: encomium, comet.
Kosmos, *order, the world*: cosmogony, cosmetic.

- Kongchē**, *a shell*: conch, conchology.
- Kōnōps**, *a gnat*: canopy (a net to keep away gnats).
- Kophinos**, *a basket*: coffin.
- Kranion**, *the skull*: cranium, craniology.
- Kratos**, *strength*: democracy, aristocracy.
- Krinō**, *I judge, I separate*: crisis, critic.
- Kruptō**, *I hide, I conceal*: apocryphal, crypt.
- Krustallos**, *clear ice*: crystal-line, crystal.
- Kuklos**, *a circle*: cycle, cyclopædia.
- Kuōn**, *a dog*: cynic.
- Kustis**, *a bladder*: cyst, encysted.
- Lambanō**, *I take*: syllable.
- Laos**, *the people*: laity.
- Lego**, *I choose, I say*: eclectic, dialect.
- Leipō**, *I fail*: ecliptic, ellipsis.
- Leitos**, *public*: liturgy.
- Lepsis**, *a seizure*: epilepsy.
- Lēthē**, *forgetfulness*: lethargy.
- Lexis**, *a word*: lexicon.
- Litancia**, *supplication*: litany.
- Lithos**, *a stone*: lithograph.
- Logos**, *a discourse, reason*: dialogue, prologue, chronology, logic.
- Lusis**, *a loosening*: paralysis, analysis.
- Machomai**, *I fight*: monomachy.
- Makros**, *large*: macrocosm.
- Mania**, *madness*: maniac.
- Manteia**, *divination*: necromancy.
- Maō**, *I move*: automaton.
- Marainō**, *I wither*: amaranth.
- Martur**, *a witness*: martyr, martyrdom.
- Mathēma**, *learning*: mathematics.
- Maxos**, *the breast*: Amazon.
- Mēchanē**, *a contrivance*: mechanics.
- Melas**, *black*: melancholy.
- Mēlon**, *an apple*: melon.
- Melos**, *a song*: melody.
- Metallon**, *metal*: metal.
- Mētēr**, *a mother*: metropolis.
- Metron**, *a measure*: diameter, geometry.
- Mikros**, *small*: microcosm, microscope.
- Mimos**, *an imitator*: mimic.
- Misos**, *hatred*: misanthropy.
- Mokos**, *a scoffer*: mock.
- Monos**, *alone*: monk, monarch.
- Morphē**, *form, shape*: metamorphosis, amorphous.
- Mnēmēn**, *remembering*: mnemonics.
- Muriol**, *ten thousand*: myriad.
- Mustikos**, *secret*: mystery, mystic.
- Muthos**, *fable*: mythical, myth.
- Naus**, *a ship*: nautical, nausea.
- Narkē**, *torpor*: narcotic.
- Nekros**, *dead*: necropolis, necromancy.
- Neos**, *new*: neology, neophyte, Neapolis.
- Nēsos**, *an island*: Polynesia, Peloponnesus.
- Neuron**, *a nerve*: neuralgia.

Nomos, a law : astronomy, anomaly.
Nosos, a disease : nosology.
Obelos, a spit : obelisk.
Octo, eight : octave.
Odē, a song : ode, prosody.
Odunē, pain : anodyne.
Oikos, a house : economy.
Oligoi, few : oligarchy.
Onoma, a name : anonymous.
Ophthalmos, the eye : ophthalmia.
Optomai, I see : optics, synopsis.
Organon, an instrument : organ, organic.
Orcheomai, I dance : orchestra.
Ornis, ornithos, a bird : ornithology.
Orphanos, bereaved : orphan.
Orthos, straight, right : orthodoxy, orthography.
Osteon, a bone : osteology.
Oxus, sharp : oxygen, oxalic.
Paideia, education, instruction : cyclopædia.
Pais, paidos, a boy : pedagogue.
Pan, all : panacea, pantheist.
Pappas, father : pope, papal.
Papūros, an Egyptian plant : paper.
Paradeisos, a garden : paradise.
Pathos, feeling : pathetic, apathy.
Pauō, I stop : pause.
Peiraō, I try : empirical.
Pelagos, the sea : archipelago.
Peltē, a target : catapult.
Pente, five : pentagon, Penteuch.
Peptō, I digest : dyspepsia.
Petalon, a leaf : petal.

Petra, a rock : petrify.
Phagō, I eat : sarcophagus.
Pharmakon, a drug : pharmacy.
Pherō, I bear : phosphorous.
Phēmē, I tell : blasphemy.
Philos, fond of : philosophy.
Phobeō, I am afraid : hydrophobia.
Phōnē, voice : phonetic.
Phōs, phōtos, light : photography.
Phrasis, saying : phrase.
Phrēn, the mind : phrenology.
Phthongos, sound : diphthong.
Phusis, nature : physical.
Planē, a wandering : planet.
Plassō, I mould : plastic.
Pleura, the side : pleurisy.
Poieō, I make, I do : poet.
Polemas, war : polemic.
Pōleō, I sell : monopoly.
Polis, a city : political, police.
Poltos, porridge : poultice.
Polus, many : polygon.
Pous, podos, a foot : antipodes.
Poros, a passage : pore.
Potamos, a river : hippopotamus.
Prassō, I do, I act : practice, pragmatic.
Presbuteros, elder : Presbyterian.
Prōtos, first : prototype.
Pseudes, false : pseudo-martyr.
Psuche, the soul : psychical.
Ptōma, a fall : symptom.
Pūr, fire : pyrotechny, pyramid.
Rachis, the backbone : rickets.
Raktos, a precipitous rock : cataract.

Rhêtôr , <i>an orator</i> : rhetoric, rhetorician.	Strophê , <i>a turning</i> : apostrophe.
Rheô , <i>I flow</i> : diarrhœa.	Stratos , <i>an army</i> : stratagem.
Rhin , <i>the nose</i> : rhinoceros.	Sukôn , <i>a fig</i> : sycophant.
Sark , <i>sarkos, flesh</i> : sarcasm.	Surina , <i>a tube</i> : syringe.
Schedê , <i>a sheet</i> : schedule.	Taphos , <i>a tomb</i> : epitaph, cenotaph.
Scholê , <i>leisure</i> : school.	Tauros , <i>a bull</i> : centaur.
Scizô , <i>I divide</i> : schism, schismatic.	Tautos , <i>the same</i> : tautology.
Scopeô , <i>I see</i> : telescope, episcopacy.	Taxis , <i>arrangement, order</i> : syntax.
Sepô , <i>I putrify</i> : septic, anti-septic.	Technê , <i>an art</i> : technical.
Sitos , <i>corn</i> : parasite.	Têle , <i>at a distance</i> : telegraph.
Skellô , <i>I dry</i> : skeleton.	Teuchos , <i>a weapon, a book</i> : pentateuch.
Skelos , <i>a leg</i> : isosceles.	Theaomai , <i>I behold with admiration, I see</i> : theatre.
Skênê , <i>a tent, a stage</i> : scene.	Theos , <i>God</i> : theism, theology, atheism.
Skiptomai , <i>I examine</i> : sceptic.	Temnô , <i>I cut</i> : anatomy, atom, epitome.
Sophos , <i>wise, prudent</i> : philosopher.	Tetra , <i>four</i> : tetrarch.
Sophia , <i>wisdom</i> : sophist, philosophy.	Thermos , <i>warm</i> : thermometer.
Spaô , <i>I draw</i> : spasm.	Thesis , <i>a placing</i> : hypothesis.
Sperma , <i>seed</i> : sperm.	Topos , <i>a place</i> : topography, topic.
Sphaira , <i>a ball or globe</i> : sphere, hemisphere.	Trepô , <i>I turn</i> : tropics, trope.
Stasis , <i>a standing</i> : statics, apostasy.	Tupos , <i>a stamp, impression, likeness</i> : type.
Stello , <i>I send</i> : apostle, epistle.	Turannos , <i>a despot</i> : tyrant.
Stenos , <i>narrow</i> : stenography.	Treis , <i>three</i> : triangle.
Stichos , <i>a line</i> : distich, acrostic.	Zeon , <i>an animal</i> : zoology.
Stereos , <i>solid</i> : stereotype.	Zônê , <i>a belt or girdle</i> : zone.
Stigma , <i>a brand or mark</i> : stigma.	

Note.—A word derived from two or more languages is called a **hybrid word**. Take, for example, the word **uncertain**. What is the derivation of this word? It is derived from the Latin **certus** and the English **un**, and consequently we class it among **hybrid words**.

PART III.

S Y N T A X .

Syntax treats of the correct arrangement of words in a sentence.

Note.—Syntax consists of two parts, called **concord** and **government**. When one word agrees with another in **case**, **gender**, **number**, or **person**, such **agreement** is designated **concord**; while **government** denotes the power exercised by one word over another in fixing its **mode**, **case**, or **tense**.

Rule I.—A **verb** must always **agree** with its **Subject** or **Nominative** in **number** and **person**: as, *The Turks fought bravely*.

Note 1.—Here the word **Turks** is the **subject** or **nominative** to the **verb fought**, and as it is in the **third person plural**, the **verb**, too, must be in the **third person plural**. Why so? Because the rule requires the verb to be of the same number and person as its nominative.

Note 2.—**Every verb**, exclusive of the infinitive, has a **nominative** expressed or understood: as, *Pray, what do you want? That is, I pray, what do you want?*

Note 3.—As a rule, the **verb** is **preceded** by its subject or nominative case. The following may be regarded as the exceptions: In **imperative** and **interrogative** sentences; *after neuter verbs*; when the verb has before it the adverbs

here, there, hence, thence, then, thus, &c.; in the case of **two sentences** being connected by **neither** or **nor**; in the **expression** of a **wish** or **supposition**, with the omission of the conjunction **if**: as, *May he be happy in his new sphere*; *were I in your place*.

Rule II.—Two or more **nouns singular** connected by **and** require **verbs, nouns, and pronouns** referring to them in the **plural** number: as, *James and John may have a holiday, because they are good boys*.

Note 1.—In this example it is to be noted that **James** and **John** are the two nouns, connected by the conjunction **and**; and as the **verb** *are*, the **pronoun** *they*, and the **noun** *boys* refer to the **two nouns** in question, they are all in the **plural** number.

Note 2.—If the two nouns coupled by **and** refer to **one** person or thing **only**, the verb must be in the **singular**: as, *That distinguished soldier and statesman was remarkable for his urbanity*. The verb must also be in the **singular** when the two nominatives singular are connected by such words as *like, with, as well as*: as, *The country, like the town, is looking better*.

Rule III.—Singular nominatives connected by **or** or **nor** must have the **verb** and **pronoun** in the **singular**: as, *John or his brother is wanted*.

Rule IV.—When a **verb** is preceded by a **singular** and a **plural nominative**, which are separated by **or** or **nor**, the verb must agree with the **latter**: as, *Neither his son nor his daughters respect him*.

Note.—In the foregoing example the two nominatives are *son* and *daughters*, and as the latter is in the **plural**, the verb *respect* is also plural in accordance with the rule. Of the two **nominatives**, the **plural** should be next the **verb**.

Rule V.—When two or more **singular nominatives** of **different** persons are separated by **or** or **nor** the **verb** should **agree** with the **last**: as, Either *I* or *thou art* under a wrong impression.

Note.—Here **I** and **thou** are the two nominatives singular separated by **or**, and as **thou** is placed last, the verb **art** is employed to agree with it.

Rule VI.—The verb **to be** is **preceded** and **followed** by the **same** case: as, *I am he*.

Note.—In the example, *I am he*, the pronoun *I* is in the **nominative case**, and placed before the verb *am*, consequently the pronoun *he* must also be in the **nominative case**.

Rule VII.—**Collective nouns**, or nouns of multitude, may have **pronouns** and **verbs** in the **singular** or **plural** number according to the notion of **unity** or **plurality** conveyed by them: as, *People know* little of the Christian religion, because *they* do not sufficiently study it; *Parliament is dissolved*.

Note 1.—In the first example the word **people** conveys a **plurality** of idea, and therefore it requires the verb **know** to be in the **plural**, and also the pronoun **they** to be in the **plural**. In the second example the term **Parliament** implies a **unity** of idea, and therefore it is followed by a verb in the **singular** number.

Note 2.—The following words are generally followed by a **plural Verb**: **Public, people, cattle, vulgar, and mankind**. These words take a **singular verb**: **Church, House of Lords, Corporation, Parliament, army, assembly, variety, court, party, sort, part, number, mob, family**.

Rule VIII.—**Transitive verbs** govern the **objective case**: as, *I advise him*.

Note 1.—Here the word **advise** is a **transitive verb**, and therefore it governs the pronoun **him** in the **objective case**. **Intransitive verbs** are sometimes followed by the **objective case** of nouns of their own signification: as, *I dreamed a dream*; the horse *ran a race*.

Note 2.—After the **past tense** of a verb, the **present infinitive** should be used: as, I expected *to see* him; not, I expected *to have seen* him. This is the usual construction with verbs that express **command, hope, desire, intention, or expectation**.

Note 3.—Some verbs require to be followed by **two objectives**; the **former** of which is called the **direct object**, and the **latter** the **complementary object**. Verbs of calling, naming, thinking, making or appointing, come under this head. The verbs **ask, beg, banish, forbid, forgive, and teach**, sometimes take **two objectives** after them: as, They called *him John*. In this example the pronoun **him** is the **direct object**, and **John** the **complementary object**. The same may be observed with respect to the following example: Teach *me thy law*. The pronoun **me** and the noun **law** are both to be considered as in the **objective case**.

Note 4.—Some verbs even in the **passive voice** take an **objective case** after them: as, John *was denied* admission. The **objective case** is also used **after adjectives and intransitive verbs** when age, value, extent, or duration is signified: as, "And Moses was a hundred and twenty *years* old when he died." Also, in such expressions as, *Two years ago, this day week*, the nouns denote time, and are to be considered as being in the **objective case**.

Rule IX.—The **latter** of two verbs having no nominative case must be in the **infinitive mode**: as, Endeavour *to improve*. In this example, the verb **to improve** has no nominative case, and therefore it is put in the **infinitive mode**.

Note 1.—The preposition **to**, the **sign of the infinitive mode**, is usually omitted after the **active voice** of the following verbs: **Behold, bid, dare, feel, find, have, hear, know, let, make, observe, perceive, and see**: as, Bid him *depart*. Here **depart** is in the **infinitive mode**, but it is not preceded by the preposition **to**, because it follows the verb **bid**.

Note 2.—The **infinitive mode** is often used independently of the rest of the sentence : as, *To conclude*, I was deceived in the matter. It is also employed in the place of a noun : as, *To err* is human, *to forgive*, divine ; that is, *Error* is human, *forgiveness*, divine.

Note 3.—The **infinitive mode** is often used after **adjectives, substantives, verbs, and participles** : as, Swift *to hear* ; time *to dine* ; he came *to see* the battle ; John was taught *to learn*.

Rule X.—Conjunctions connect the **same cases of nouns** and **tenses of verbs** : as, You *and* I are happy ; follow the righteous *and* shun the wicked.

Note.—It sometimes happens that **conjunctions connect verbs of different modes and tenses**, and when this occurs it is usual to **repeat the nominative** : as, *He* is here, *but he* will leave us immediately. Here we find the verb **is** in the **present tense**, and **will leave** in the **future tense**, and therefore the nominative **he** is **repeated**.

Rule XI.—When **two nouns** come together, and one serves to **explain the other**, they are said to be in **apposition**, and therefore **agree in case** : as, David, *King* of Israel.

Note 1.—In the foregoing example the word **King** explains who David was, and is therefore in the same case as **David**, and this position of the word is called **apposition**. The word “apposition” is from the Latin **appositus**, which means *placed near*.

Note 2.—A **noun** often stands in **apposition** to a whole sentence : as, The robbers broke into the house, and plundered every room in it—a deed for which they were severely punished.

Note 3.—Should the nouns in **apposition** be in the **possessive case**, only one of them requires the **apostrophe** and **s** : as, Purchase the *Poet* Goldsmith’s “Deserted Village.”

Note 4.—There seems to be a difference of opinion as to whether we should say the *Miss Campbells* or the *Misses Campbell*, and this appears to be the proper place to settle the question.

Miss and **Campbell** being in **apposition**, and as only one of the two takes the sign of the plural, it must be given to the more **important**. As **Campbell** is the **principal noun**, it takes the plural form, and therefore it is correct to say the **Miss Campbells**, and not the **Misses Campbell**. In the case of **double titles**, there must be **double plurals**: as, *The Lords Justices*.

Rule XII.—Two Nouns coming together, and the one not being explanatory of the other, the **former** is put in the **possessive case**: as, *Johnson's Dictionary*.

Note 1.—Here we have the **former** of the two words in the **possessive case**, which shows that the **latter** belongs to it, or is the thing **possessed**.

Note 2.—When the thing possessed is the property of more than one person separately considered, the sign of the **possessive case** ('s) should be **annexed to each**: as, *These are John's and James's rabbits*. Sometimes, however, the sign of the possessive is annexed only to the **last**: as, *James, Henry, and John's property*.

Note 3.—The **possessive case** often stands **alone**, the other noun upon which it depends being understood: as, *St. Paul's*, the word *Cathedral* being implied.

Note 4.—In many cases it is more elegant to use **of** instead of the **apostrophe** and **s**. Thus, *The wisdom of Solomon* is preferable to *Solomon's wisdom*. Of such propriety a polite ear will always be the best judge. Sometimes we employ both **of** and the **apostrophe** with **s**: as, *A poem of Cowper's*. In such instances as these we really have **two possessive cases**; for the true meaning is, *one of the poems of Cowper*.

Rule XIII.—**Prepositions** govern the **objective case**: as, *He went from London to Liverpool*.

Note 1.—In the foregoing example **London** and **Liverpool** are both in the **objective case**; the former being governed by the preposition **from**, and the latter by the preposition **to**.

Note 2.—The **preposition** should be placed **before** the **relative** which it governs: as, *To whom did you give the*

money? This mode of speaking is more dignified than to say, Who did you give the money to? The **preposition follows** the word **that** when it is used as a **relative**: as, *The bed that the Duke sleeps in.*

Note 3.—**Prepositions** are sometimes **understood** before nouns denoting time, &c.: as, He worked all week; that is, He worked **during** all the week.

Rule XIV.—A **noun** and its **pronoun** must not be used as the **nominative** or **subject** to the **same verb**: as, *John, he* is good. It should be, *John* is good.

Note.—There is an occasional departure from this rule when the nominative requires to be made **emphatical**: as, "For the Lord, He is the God."

Rule XV.—**Every adjective belongs** to a **noun** which is either **expressed** or **understood**: as, The *pious* are happy; that is, *Pious persons* are happy.

Note 1.—Adjectives are also used to qualify whatever is **equivalent** to a **noun**: as, To ride is *pleasant*: walking is *agreeable*.

Note 2.—Adjectives are often connected with verbs, and appear to be used as adverbs: as, Keep the palace *safe*. The adjective *safe* in this example really **qualifies** the noun **palace**, and does not belong to the verb **keep**. There are instances, however, in which adjectives are used for adverbs. Thus, in Shakespeare we have "*indifferent red*," and in the English Bible, "*exceeding*," instead of "*exceedingly*."

Rule XVI.—In comparing **two objects** with each other, the **comparative** degree of the **adjective** should be used; and in comparing **more than two** the **superlative** ought to be employed: as, John is the *stronger* of the two; James is the *tallest* of the three.

Note.—The **comparative** with **other** is often used in the sense of the **superlative**: as, Solomon was *wiser* than all *other* men. This is equivalent to, Solomon was the *wisest* of all men.

Rule XVII.—**Double negatives** and **double comparatives** and **superlatives** are **improper**: as, I do *not* want *no* bread; this apple is *more sweeter*; Osman Pasha is the *most bravest* of the Turkish commanders.

Note.—These examples should be: I do not want **any** bread; this apple is **sweeter**; Osman Pasha is the **bravest** of the Turkish commanders.

Rule XVIII.—An **adjective** in the **comparative degree**, and the pronoun **other**, should be followed by **than**: as, He is better *than* I; we have no *other* book *than* this.

Rule XIX.—The **perfect participle** should always be used after the auxiliary verbs **have** and **be**: as, I have *written*, and not I have *wrote*.

Note.—It is equally **incorrect** to use the **perfect participle** instead of the **past tense**: as, He *drunk* some water; whereas it ought to be, He *drank* some water. **Drunk** is the **perfect participle**, and **drank** the **past tense** of the verb to drink.

Rule XX.—A **pronoun** must be of the **same number**, **person** and **gender** as the **noun** it represents: as, Thomas was requested to leave the room, and *he* at once obeyed.

Note.—In this example the pronoun **he** represents the noun **Thomas**, who is the third person singular, and of the masculine gender.

Rule XXI.—The **relative pronoun** agrees with its antecedent in **gender, number and person**: as, Thou *who* lovest; The house *which* he bought.

Note 1.—Here the relatives **who** and **which** are both of the same *number, gender and person* as their respective *antecedents* **thou** and **house**.

Note 2.—**Who** is applied to persons, **which** to animals and things; while **that** is employed instead of **who** or **which** in the following cases: After the interrogative **who**; after an adjective in the **superlative degree**; the words **all, any, same, none, nothing**; two antecedents, when one requires **who** and the other **which**; and also after a **collective noun**.

Rule XXII.—A **relative pronoun**, preceded by two antecedents of different persons, usually **agrees in person** with the **latter**: as, Thou art the boy *who* brings good news.

Note.—In the preceding example **who** is in the third person, because the word **boy**, the **latter** antecedent, comes **next** to it. Sometimes, however, the **relative** agrees with the **former** antecedent.

Rule XXIII.—The **word** that **asks**, and the **word** which **answers** a **question** must be in the **same case**: as, *Who* told him? *I* told him. *Whose* pen is this? John's.

Note 1.—In the example before us, the interrogative **who** is in the **nominative case**, and therefore the pronoun **I** is also in the **nominative**. The **former** of the two words **asks** the **question** and the **latter** **answers** it, and, if fully expressed, the answer would be, *I told him*. The same remarks will apply to the second example.

Note 2.—Ambiguity will be avoided by placing the **relative** as near as possible to its **antecedent**: as, The man was discharged *who* misconducted himself; should be, The man, *who* misconducted himself, was discharged.

Rule XXIV.—The distributive numeral adjectives **each**, **every**, **either**, **neither**, agree with nouns in the **singular number only**: as, *Every* man is mortal.

Note 1.—The noun **man** in this example is **qualified** by the distributive numeral adjective **every**. When objects are taken collectively **every** may qualify a plural noun: as, **Every** three hours.

Note 2.—**Either** signifies **one** of two, but not both: as, Take *either* side. **Neither** denotes *not* either. **Each** is used of two or more objects taken singly. **Every** refers to more than two objects, and denotes that all are taken *individually*. **Either** is often incorrectly used for **each**: as, There were troops on *either* side the river. It ought to be, on **each** side of the river.

Rule XXV.—Two persons or things being **contrasted**, **that**, **those**, and **the one**, refer to the *first* mentioned, and **this**, **these**, and **the other**, to the *last*: as, There is a great difference between justice and injustice; *that* is right, *this* wrong.

Note.—Instead of **that** and **this**, the **former** and **the latter** are sometimes used. **That** and **this** are most frequently applied to **things**; while **former** and **latter** are applied both to **persons** and **things**.

Rule XXVI.—Sometimes a **sentence**, or **part** of a sentence is the **nominative** to a verb: as, To speak the truth, is highly proper.

Note.—Here the words, *To speak the truth*, stand as the **nominative** to the verb **is**.

Rule XXVII.—**Every sentence**, which implies **future time** and **doubt**, ought to be in the **subjunctive mode**: as, If he *be* at home, bring *him with you*.

Note.—It will be seen from the present example that both **future time** and **doubt** are implied, and therefore the verb is put in the **subjunctive mode**.

Rule XXVIII.—Certain **prepositions** ought to be used before the **names of places** :—

To is used after **verbs** signifying **motion** : as, I am *going* to town.

At is used after the verbs **to be**, **to arrive**, **to land**, **to touch** : as, We *were* at home.

In is used before the names of **countries** and **cities** : as, He *lives in* London ; I *reside in* America.

At is put before **villages**, **towns**, and **foreign cities** : as, We *were at* Formby, *at* Liverpool, *at* Rome.

Rule XXX.—**Adverbs** are generally put **before** adjectives, **after** verbs, and sometimes **between** the **auxiliary** and the **principal verb** : as, She is *very* attractive ; he fought *bravely*.

Rule XXX.—Every **participle** refers to a noun or pronoun : as, *Laughing* heartily, she took her departure.

Note.—In the previous example the participle **laughing** has reference to the pronoun **she**. Sometimes the participle refers to an entire sentence.

Rule XXXI.—The **incomplete** and **perfect participles** of **transitive verbs** govern the **objective case** : as, *Seizing* the dagger, he thrust it into his breast ; *having requested* him to keep silence, I *retired to rest*.

Note.—The words *dagger* and *him* are both in the **objective case**; the former being governed by the *incomplete* participle *seizing*, and the latter by the *perfect* participle *having requested*.

Rule XXXII.—When the **incomplete participle** is used **substantively** or as a **verbal noun**, it takes **a, an,** or **the** before it, and **of** after it: as, It is the *writing* of the book in which the difficulty mainly consists.

Note.—Here the incomplete participle is used **substantively** or as a **verbal noun**, and therefore we put **the** before it, and **of** after it. Sometimes the **article** and **of** are both omitted. In fact, **of** should **not follow** when **a, an,** or **the** does not precede the termination in *ing*.

Rule XXXIII.—The **preposition-verb** is formed from an **intransitive verb** and a **preposition**: as, *We laughed at him*.

Note.—The intransitive verb *laugh* and the preposition *at*, as noticed before, form what is called the transitive preposition-verb *laughed at*.

Rule XXXIV.—**Certain words and phrases** require **appropriate prepositions** after them. They are as follow:—

Abhorrence of
Abide **in, at, by**
Abound **in, with**
Abridgement of
Absent from
Accede to
Accord **with, to**
Accuse of
Acquiesce **in**

Acquit of
Adapt **to, for**
Adequate to
Adhere to
Adjourn **at, to, for**
Admonish of
Affection for
Affinity **to, between**
Agree **with, to**

Agreeable to
 Alienate from
 Alight from, by
 Alliance with
 Alteration in
 Amazed at
 Ambitious of
 Antipathy to, against
 Ask of, for, after
 Assent to
 Attend to, upon
 Averse to, from
 Avert from
 Bear with
 Bereft of
 Bestow upon
 Blush at, for
 Boast of
 Call on, for, at, upon
 Capable of
 Catch at, with, by
 Change for
 Clear of, from
 Compare with
 Compatible with
 Compliance with
 Composed of, by
 Confer on, upon, with
 Confide in, to
 Conformable to
 Congenial to
 Connect with
 Conscious of ,
 Consequent on
 Consonant to, with
 Convenient to, for
 Conversant with, in
 Convince of

Correspond with, to
 Coupled with, by
 Deficient in
 Deficiency of
 Depend on, upon
 Deprive of
 Derogate from
 Derogatory to
 Desirous of
 Devolve on, upon
 Die of, by
 Differ from
 Difference among, between
 Difficulty in
 Diminution of
 Disappointed of, in
 Disapprove of
 Discouragement to
 Disposed to
 Dissent from
 Distinguished from, by
 Eager in
 Enamoured of
 Endeared to
 Endowed with, by
 Engaged in, for
 Enjoin upon
 Exception to, from
 Exclusive of
 Expert at, in
 Fall under, from, upon,
 into, in
 Fawn on, upon
 Foreign to
 Free from
 Frown at, on
 Glad of, at
 Greedy after, of

Grieve at, over	Recreant to, from
Guilty of	Reduce to
Hinder from	Reflect on, upon
Ignorant of	Regard for, to
Incapable of	Rejoice at, with
Inculcate upon	Relevant to
Independent of	Rely upon
Indifferent to	Remind of
Initiate into, in	Repine at
Inseparable from	Replete with
Insist upon	Resemblance to
Intent on, upon	Resolve on, upon
Inured to	Significant of
Made of, for	Similar to
Marry to	Smile at, upon
Martyr for, to	Swerve from
Militate against	Sympathise with
Mistrustful of	Taste of, for
Need of	Think of, on
Observance of	Thirst for, after
Opposite to	Triumph over
Overwhelmed with, by, pre- paratory to	True to, of
Prejudice against	Trust in, to
Prejudicial to	Unite with
Profit by	Versed in
Proud of	Wait on, at, for, in
Provide for, with, against	Want of
Pursuance of	Warn of
Pursuant to	Weep at, for
Reconcile to	Worthy of
	Yield to

Note.—Some of the words in the preceding list are followed by **several prepositions** which require further explanation, or the learner may be left in a state of ambiguity as to their correct use.

We abide with a person; by an opinion; at a place; in a country.

We adjourn **for** a month ; **at** three ; **to** Thursday.

We agree **with** a person ; we agree **to** a proposal.

Among refers to **many** ; **between**, only to **two**.

We are disappointed **of** what we do not get ; and disappointed **in** that which does not come up to our expectation.

Fall **in** means to yield, to comply. Fall **out**, to happen, to quarrel. Fall **upon**, to attack. Fall **from**, to revolt. Fall **off**, to forsake.

We are glad **of** that which **benefits ourselves** ; and glad **at** that which is **profitable to others**.

A person is a martyr **for** a cause ; but a martyr **to** a disease.

A taste **for** implies a capacity of enjoying ; while a taste **of** denotes actual enjoyment.

Rule XXXV.—Some conjunctions require other conjunctions that correspond with them : as—

Both requires **and** after it : as, *Both John and James deserved censure.*

Neither „ **nor** : *Neither the father nor the mother could sanction such conduct.*

Though „ **yet** : *Though a beggar, yet he was not without friends.*

Whether „ **or** : *Whether he will be present at the onslaught or not, I cannot tell.*

Either „ **or** : *Either John or his brother may go to town.*

As „ **as** : *When equality is denoted : My position is as good as yours.*

As „ **so** : *As the one dieth, so dieth the other.*

So „ **as** : *The younger boy is not so vigorous as his elder brother.*

So „ **that** : *I feel so ill that I must retire to rest.*

Rule XXXVI.—Nouns both in the **singular** and in the **plural** number are limited by the distinguishing adjectives **same**, **self-same**, **yon**, and **yonder**: as, *Yon* mountain is Snowdon; *yon* hills are the Cheviots.

Note.—The learner will observe that **yon** in the foregoing examples is applied to **mountain** in the **singular**, and **hills** in the **plural** number, and **limits** the extension of each.

Rule XXXVII.—The **distinguishing** adjective **the** is applied to nouns in the **singular** and **plural** number: as, *The* stable; *the* stables.

Note.—In these examples the **distinguishing** adjective **the** exercises a **limiting** influence upon **stable** in the singular, and **stables** in the plural, by making them out as stables **well-known**.

Rule XXXVIII.—The **distinguishing** adjective **a** or **an** is used before nouns in the **singular** number: as, *a* book; *an* orange.

Note 1.—The distinguishing adjective **a** is used before the following words: Few, very few, many, great many, hundred, thousand, dozen, score, &c.: as, *a* few apples; *a* thousand Turks. When **few** is preceded by **so**, **some**, **too**, **but**, **a** is omitted: as, *so* few.

Note 2.—**A** is sometimes used as a **preposition**: as, *a*-bed, that is, *on* bed. Sometimes **a** is used before the **incomplete participle**: as, Henry is gone *a* walking. Sometimes it denotes **each** or **every**: as, Apples are sixpence *a* dozen.

Rule XXXIX.—When two or more **adjectives** or **nouns** refer to the **same person** or **thing**, the **distinguishing** adjective must be used **only with the first**: as, *An* honest and upright man.

Note.—Should the two **adjectives** or **nouns** be applied to **different** persons or things, each takes the **article** or **distinguishing adjective**: as, *The* ancient and *the* modern systems differ considerably. After a comparative the distinguishing adjective is **omitted** before the **latter** of two nouns when **both** refer to the **same** person: as, He is *a* better reader than preacher.

Rule XL.—**Adjectives** that belong to the **definite ordinal numeral class** qualify nouns in the **singular** number: as, *The third* hour.

Note.—In the foregoing example the noun **hour** in the **singular** number is qualified by **third**, which is a definite ordinal numeral adjective.

Rule XLI.—The distinguishing adjectives **this** and **that** are applied to nouns in the **singular** number, and **these** and **those** to nouns in the **plural** number: as, *This* man; *these* men.

Note.—From the preceding rule it will be seen that *these kind* and *those sort* are incorrect, and should be, **this** kind and **that** sort. It is incorrect to use *for* before the **infinitive mode**: as, He went *for to* tell him; should be: He went *to tell* him. **Never** is often improperly used for **ever**. Thus, I seldom or never see him; should be: I seldom, if *ever*, see him.

Rule XLII.—Though **interjections** do not admit of any construction, yet some of them are followed by the **objective** case of the **first personal pronoun singular** and the **nominative** of the **second**, both in the **singular** and in the **plural**: as, *Ah me!* *O ye simple ones!*

Note.—In many **interjectional** phrases there is a **preposition** or **verb** understood: as, Woe's him, that is, Woe is to him.

EXAMPLE OF PARSING.

"At church, with meek and unaffected grace,
 His looks adorned the venerable place ;
 Truth from his lips prevailed with double sway,
 And fools, who came to scoff, remained to pray."

At	Preposition, gov. church.
church,	Noun, com., third, sing. ; obj., gov. by at.
with	Preposition, gov. grace.
meek	Adjective, pos. ; qualifying grace.
and	Conjunction, joining meek to unaffected.
unaffected	Adjective, pos. ; qualifying grace.
grace,	Noun, com., third, sing. ; obj., gov. by with.
His	Pronoun, pers., third, sing. ; poss., gov. by looks.
looks	Noun, com., third, plur. ; nom. to adorned.
adorned	Verb, reg. trans., indic., past, third, plur. ; agreeing with looks.
the	Adjective, limiting place.
venerable	Adjective, pos. ; qualifying place.
place ;	Noun, com., third, sing. ; obj., gov. by adorned.
Truth	Noun, com., third, sing. ; nom. to prevailed.
from	Preposition, gov. lips.
his	Pronoun, pers., third, sing. ; poss., gov. by lips.
lips	Noun, com., third, plur. ; obj., gov. by from.
prevailed	Verb, reg. intrans., indic., past, third, sing. ; agreeing with truth.
with	Preposition, gov. sway.
double	Adjective, limiting sway.
sway,	Noun, com., third, sing. ; obj., gov. by with.
And	Conjunction, joining sentence truth—sway, to fools—pray.
fools,	Noun, com., third, plur. ; nom. to remained.
who	Pronoun, rel, third, plur. ; nom. to came.
came	Verb, irreg. intrans., indic., past, third, plur. ; agreeing with who.
to scoff,	Verb, reg. intrans., infin. ; depending on came.
remained	Verb, reg. intrans., indic., past, third, plur. ; agreeing with fools.
to pray.	Verb, reg. intrans., infin. ; depending on remained.

GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS.

I.—By **Grammatical Analysis** is meant the resolving of paragraphs into their component sentences, and of sentences into their elementary parts ; and then showing the relation, first, between the different sentences, and, secondly, between the elementary parts.

SENTENCES.

II.—A **sentence** is a complete thought expressed in words.

III.—The essential parts of a sentence are the **subject** and the **predicate**.

IV.—The **Predicate** is that part of the sentence which makes a statement or affirmation about something.

V.—The **Subject** names the thing about which the statement or affirmation is made.

VI.—The secondary parts of a sentence consist of **attributes** to the primary parts.

VII.—When the verb is transitive the affirmation is **completed** by means of a noun, or something equivalent to a noun, which is called the **object**.

VIII.—Certain classes of verbs require two objects to complete the sense of the predicate ; the one being called the **direct**, and the other the **indirect** object.

The following transitive verbs take an indirect* as well as a direct object after them: **Ask, lend, pay, teach, promise, give, bid, dare, feel, make, allow, get, bring, do, &c.**: as—

He lent *him* (indirect) *a pound* (direct).

He taught *him* (indirect) *Euclid* (direct).

IX.—The **predicate** must be either a **verb**: as, The sun *shines*; or, the verb **to be**, followed by—

(1) An **adjective**: as, The earth *is round*.

(2) A **noun**: as, London *is a city*.

(3) An **adverb**: as, Richard *is there*.

(4) A **phrase**: as, Napoleon *was of small stature*.

(5) A **sentence**: as, It *is where I told you*.

X.—The following intransitive verbs must also take some other part of speech after them to complete the predicate: **Become, grow, seem, can, shall, will, &c.**: as, The merchant **became rich**; I **can write**; I **shall go**.

XI.—When one predicate has two or more subjects, or two or more objects, or one subject is made to apply to two or more predicates, such sentences are said to be **contracted**.

XII.—Sentences may be divided into three classes, *viz.*: **Simple, Complex, and Compound**.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

I.—A **simple sentence** is that which has only one **subject** and **predicate**.

II.—The **simple** or **grammatical subject** is a word or phrase standing in the nominative case.

III.—The **logical subject** is made up of the simple subject with its enlargements.

IV.—The **simple subject** and the **simple object** may be enlarged : first, by a single word, that is, an **adjective**, a **noun in apposition**, or a **noun or pronoun in the possessive case**; second, an **adjective phrase**; third, by an **adjective sentence**.

EXAMPLE.

- (1) The pupil learns lessons.
- (2) The **diligent** pupil learns **long** lessons (Adjective).
- (3) The pupil **of diligent habits** learns lessons **of great length** (Adj. phrase).
- (4) The pupil **who is diligent** learns lessons **that are long**. (Adj. sentence).

V.—In like manner the **extension** of the predicate may consist of : first, an **adverb**; second, an **adverbial phrase**; third, an **adverbial sentence**.

EXAMPLE.

- (1) *He died* **bravely** (Adverb).

- (2) He died **in a brave manner** (Adv. phrase).
 (3) He died **as a brave man should die** (Adv. sentence)-

VI.—The extensions of the predicate may be conveniently divided into four classes :—

- (1) **Time**, which answers the questions, **When ?**
How often ? How long ?
 (2) **Place**, which answers the questions, **Where ?**
Whence ? Whither ?
 (3) **Manner**, which answers the questions, **How ?**
How much ? With what ?
 (4) **Cause**, which answers the questions, **Why ?**
For what reason ? On what condition ?

VII.—Examples of **Tabular Analysis** of Simple Sentences :—

1.

William the Conqueror fought the Battle of Hastings
 in the year 1066.

2.

"Beside yon straggling fence the village master
 taught his little school."

3.

The pupils spent their holidays pleasantly.

4.

David Gam was knighted on the battle-field for his
bravery.

EXAMPLE 1.

Subject.	Predicate.	Object.	Extension of Predicate.
William, the Conqueror	fought	the battle of Hastings	in the year 1066 (time).

EXAMPLE 2.

The village Master	taught	his little school	beside yon straggling fence (place).
--------------------	--------	-------------------	--------------------------------------

EXAMPLE 3.

The pupils	spent	their holidays	pleasantly (manner).
------------	-------	----------------	----------------------

EXAMPLE 4.

David Gam	was knighted	—	on the battle-field (place) for his bravery (cause).
-----------	--------------	---	--

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

I.—A **complex sentence** is that which, with only one principal subject and predicate, contains one or more **subordinate** sentences.

II.—The **subordinate sentences** may be classified under the following three heads:—

- (1) **The Noun sentence.**
- (2) **The Adjective sentence.**
- (3) **The Adverbial sentence.**

THE NOUN SENTENCE.

III.—The **Noun sentence** is a noun or noun phrase expanded into a sentence : as—

Patience is a virtue (Noun).

To be patient is a virtue (Noun phrase).

That a man be patient is a virtue (Noun sentence).

IV.—The **Noun sentence** supplies the place of a noun, either as the subject or object of the verb in the principal sentence ; or it may be used in the place of a noun or pronoun in apposition. It is generally introduced by the conjunction **that**, or by an **interrogative word** : as—

That we should succour the needy is the duty of all men (subject).

Socrates proved *that virtue is its own reward* (object).

The belief *that we should finally succeed* cheered us (noun in apposition).

THE ADJECTIVE SENTENCE.

V.—The **Adjective sentence** is an adjective or adjective phrase expanded into a sentence (See example, page, 161).

VI.—The **Adjective sentence** may qualify any noun in the principal sentence. It is generally introduced by the **relative pronouns**, or by a **relative adverb** ; such as : **Wherein, whither, why, wherefore, how, when, &c.** : as—

A man *who is prudent* is respected.

The general captured the town *which was thought impregnable*.

The criminal was taken in the house wherein he lived.

THE ADVERBIAL SENTENCE.

VII.—The **Adverbial sentence** is an adverb or adverbial phrase expanded into a sentence (See example, page 161-2).

VIII.—The **Adverbial sentence** generally qualifies the predicate of the principal sentence ; it may also modify an **adverb** or **adjective**, by specifying some condition of **time, place, manner, or cause** :
as—

He was ready *when I arrived* (time).

He was commanded to be taken *from whence he came* (place).

He learnt his lessons *as well as he could* (manner).

He was despised *because he was worthless* (cause).

IX.—Examples of **Tabular Analysis** of Complex Sentences :—

1.

Shakespeare says, "all the world's a stage."

2.

"Near yonder copse, where once the garden smiled,
The village preacher's modest mansion rose."

3.

"Sweet was the sound, when oft, at evening's close,
Up yonder hill the village murmur rose."

4.

"Of man's first disobedience, and the fruit
Of that forbidden tree, whose mortal taste
Brought death into the world and all our woe,
With loss of Eden, till one greater Man
Restore us, and regain the blissful seat,
Sing, heavenly Muse."

EXAMPLE 1.

Sentence.	Kind of Sentence.	Subject.	Predicate.	Object.	Extension of Predicate.
A Shakespeare says a "all the world's a stage."	Principal to a Noun sentence to A	Shakespeare all the world	says is a stage	sentence a	

EXAMPLE 2.

A Near yonder copse the village preacher's modest mansion rose, a where once the garden smiled.	Principal to a Adjective sentence to A	The village preacher's modest mansion (where) the gar- den	rose smiled		near yonder copse (place). once (time).
--	--	--	----------------	--	--

EXAMPLE 3.

A Sweet was the sound, a when oft at evening's close, up yonder hill the village murmur rose.	Principal to a Adverbial sentence to A	The sound (when) the vil- lage murmurs	was sweet rose		oft (time) at evening's close (time) up yonder hill (place).
---	--	--	-------------------	--	--

EXAMPLE 4.

Sentence.	Kind of Sentence.	Subject.	Predicate.	Object.	Extension of Predicate.
A Sing, heavenly muse, of man's first disobedience, and the fruit of that forbidden tree, with loss of Eden,	Principal to a, b, and c	thou (understood)	sing of	man's first disobedience, and the fruit of that forbidden tree, with loss of Eden	
a whose mortal taste brought death into the world, and all our woe,	Adjective to A.	(whose) mortal taste	brought	death and all our woe,	into the world (place).
b till one greater man restore us,	Adverbial (contracted) to A and a	(till) one greater man	does (understood) restore	us,	
c and regain the blissful seat.	Adverbial (contracted) co-ordinate to b	(and) till one greater man (understood)	does (understood) regain	the blissful seat,	

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

I.—A **Compound Sentence** consists of two or more principal sentences, each of which may have any number of **subordinate** sentences.

II.—**Compound sentences** are united by **co-ordinate** conjunctions, and are consequently termed **co-ordinate** sentences.

III.—**Co-ordinate sentences** may be divided into four classes :—

- (1) **Copulative**, connected by **and, also, as well as, both, and, not only, but, moreover, further, furthermore.**
- (2) **Disjunctive**, connected by **either, or, otherwise, else, neither, nor.**
- (3) **Adversative**, connected by **but, only, yet, still, nevertheless, however, though, notwithstanding, on the one hand, on the other hand.**
- (4) **Illative**, connected by **therefore, wherefore, for, hence, since, whence, accordingly, thereupon, consequently, then, and so, now.**

IV.—Examples of **Tabular Analysis** of Compound Sentences :—

1.

“Reading maketh a full man ; conference, a ready man ; and writing, an exact man.”

2.

“Not a drum was heard—not a funeral note,
As his corpse to the ramparts we hurried ;
Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot
O'er the grave where our hero was buried.

3.

“What in me is dark,
Illumine ; what is low, raise and support ;
That to the height of this great argument
I may assert Eternal Providence,
And justify the ways of God to men.”

EXAMPLE 1.

Sentence.	Kind of Sentence.	Subject.	Predicate.	Object.	Extension of Predicate.
A Reading maketh a full man;	Principal co-ordinate with B and C	Reading	maketh	a full man	
B Conference, a ready man;	Principal (contracted) co-ordinate with A	conference	maketh (understood)	a ready man	
C and writing, an exact man.	Principal (contracted) co-ordinate with A and B	writing	maketh (understood)	an exact man	

EXAMPLE 2.

A Not a drum was heard,	Principal to a and co-ordinate with B and C	Not a drum	was heard		
B Not a funeral note,	Principal (contracted) to a and co-ordinate with A	not a funeral note	was heard (understood)		
a As his corpse to the ram-	Adverbial to A and B	(as) we	hurried	his corpse	to the ram-parts (place).
C Not a soldier discharged his farewell shot o'er the grave	Principal to b , co-ordinate with A and B	Not a soldier (where) our	discharged	his farewell shot	o'er the grave (place).

EXAMPLE 3.

Sentence.	Kind of Sentence.	Subject.	Predicate.	Object.	Extension of Predicate.
^a What in me is dark,	Noun sentence to A	what in me	is dark		
^A illumine;	Principal (contracted) to a, c, and d, and co-ordinate with B and C	thou (understood)	illumine	sentence a	
^b what is low,	Noun sentence to B and C	(what) in me (understood)	is low		
^B raise	Principal (contracted) to b, c, and d, and co-ordinate with A and C	thou (understood)	raise	sentence b	
^C and support;	Principal (contracted) to b, c, and d, and co-ordinate with A and B	(and) thou (understood)	support	sentence b	
^c that to the height of this great argument I may assert Eternal Providence,	Adverbial to A, B, and C	(that) I	may assert	Eternal Providence	to the height of this great argument (manner).
^d justify the ways of God to men.	Adverbial to A, B, and C, and co-ordinate with c	I (understood)	may (understood) justify	the ways of God to men.	

PART IV.

P R O S O D Y.

Prosody consists of two parts :—

1.—The correct **pronunciation** of words and sentences.

2.—The laws of **versification**.

I.—**PRONUNCIATION.**

Pronunciation comprises the following particulars :—

- 1.—**Accent.**
- 2.—**Quantity.**
- 3.—**Emphasis.**
- 4.—**Pause.**
- 5.—**Tone.**

By the term **accent** is meant the laying of **greater stress** upon any particular syllable of a word : as, *Táble, declíne*.

Note 1.—In the foregoing examples the **accent** or stress of *the voice* is on the **first** syllable of the word **table**, and on the **second** syllable of the word **decline**.

Note 2.—We have not only **primary** or **principal** accents, but also **secondary** accents. The **principal** accent is that which distinguishes one syllable in a word from the rest. The **secondary** accent is that stress laid upon another syllable in addition to the principal accent, so that each part of the word may be more harmoniously and distinctly heard. Thus, the word **demonstration** has two accents. The **primary** or **principal** accent is on the **penultimate** syllable, and the **secondary** accent is on the **first** syllable.

Note 3.—The principles of accentuation may be thus classified :—

- 1.—**Radical Accentuation.**
- 2.—**Terminational Accentuation.**
- 3.—**Distinctive Accentuation.**

Saxon words have, for the most part, the **accent** on the **root**; while those from the learned languages generally take the **accent** on the **termination**. The former is **radical**, and the latter **terminational** accentuation : as, *Háppy, háppily, háppiness ; céremony, ceremónious*. When we use accents to distinguish one word from another we employ **distinctive** accentuation : as, *Rébel, to rebel*.

By the **quantity** of a syllable is meant the time required to pronounce it. Syllables are either **long** or **short** : as, *admīre*.

Note.—A **short** syllable is pronounced in **half** the time occupied by a **long** one : thus, *bite, bit*. The former of these two words is **long**, and the latter **short**. The time spent in pronouncing *bite* is **double** of that occupied in giving utterance to *bit*.

Emphasis is the laying of **stress** upon any particular word in a sentence in order to make the sense more explicit : as, He is a *thoughtful*, but not a *learned* man.

Note.—The **emphatical** words in the previous example are **thoughtful** and **learned**, and they serve to indicate the precise meaning designed to be conveyed.

A **pause** or **rest**, in reading or speaking, is a cessation of the voice during a perceptible space of time: as, "Remember — that thou keep holy the Sabbath day."

Note.—In this example there is a **pause**, or cessation of the voice, after pronouncing the word **remember**, and before uttering the rest of the sentence.

Tone consists in the inflecting or modulating of the voice according to the sense.

Note.—**Accent** and **quantity** pertain to the **pronunciation** of **words**; while **pause** and **emphasis** are required to complete the **meaning** of the sentence. **Tone** depends upon the **feelings** of the **speaker**.

By **Prose** is meant language **free** from **poetical measures**, or not restricted by a certain number of syllables.

II.—VERSIFICATION.

Versification is the art of **arranging** the long and short syllables, and forming feet into harmonious measure.

There are two kinds of verse: one of which is called **rhyme**, and the other **blank verse**.

Rhyme is the consonance of sounds at the ends of verses, as in the subjoined example:—

For **rhyme** with reason may dispense,
And sound has right to govern sense.—*Prior*.

Note.—Here it will be observed that the word **sense** rhymes with **pense**, the last syllable of the word **dispense**.

In **blank** verse the ends of the verses do **not** correspond in sound.

Alliteration, which was common in the earliest periods of English poetry, is the **repetition** of the same **letter** at the commencement of two or more words in proximity to each other. Thus—

“**A**pt **a**lliteration’s **a**rtful **a**id.”

Rhythm is the **recurrence** of **accents** at regular intervals.

Scanning consists in **counting** the number of feet or measures in a verse.

Note.—**Accented syllables** in scanning are considered **long**, though the sound of the vowel be **short**; while **unaccented** syllables are **short**.

The **parts** or syllabic measures, of which verse is composed, are called feet.

There are **eight kinds** of **feet** used in **English versification**, **four** of which consist of **two** syllables, and **four** of **three** syllables: thus—

Dissyllabic:		Trissyllabic:	
An Iambus :	◡ —	A Dactyl :	— ◡ ◡
A Trochee :	— ◡	An Anapæst :	◡ ◡ —
A Spondee :	— —	A Tribrach :	◡ ◡ ◡
A Pyrhic :	◡ ◡ ◡	An Amphibrach :	◡ — ◡

In an **Iambus** the **first** syllable is **unaccented**, and the **last accented**: as, *Deducé*.

In a **Trochee** this order of things is reversed, the **first** syllable being **accented**, and the **second unaccented**: as *Trípod*.

Both the syllables of a **Spondee** are **accented**: as, *Fárewéll*.

Both the syllables of a **Pyrrhic** are **unaccented**: as, *Plaús-íblě*.

The **first** syllable of a **Dactyl** is **accented**, while the **second** and **third** are **unaccented**: as, *mérrily*.

An **Anapæst** has the **first two** syllables **unaccented**, and the **third** **accented**: as, *Analyse*.

All the syllables of a **Tribrach** are **unaccented**: as, *Vul-nerable*.

An **Amphibrach** has the **second** syllable **accented**, and the **first** and **third** **unaccented**: as, *Prólífic*.

Note.—The word **Iambus** comes from the Greek **iapto**, *I* *assail or attack*, because it was the **metre** first used by writers of **satire**. **Trochee** is derived from the Greek **trochos**, *a running*. This metrical foot received the name of **trochee** on account of its *tripping* or joyous character. **Spondee**, from the Greek **spondē**, *a libation, a treaty*, is so called because solemn **melodies** in this metre were sung on the occasion of **making** and **ratifying treaties**. **Pyrrhic** from the Greek **pyrrichē**, *a warlike dance*, which required very nimble turning of the body, as if endeavouring to avoid the strokes of an enemy in battle. The word **Dactyl** is from the Greek **dactulos**, *a finger*, being so called from its likeness to the **finger** which has **one long joint** and **two short** ones. **Anapæst**, from the Greek **anapaistos**, *struck back*, being so named because it is a **dactyl struck back** or reversed. **Tribrach**, from the Greek

treis, three, and brachys, short. **Amphibrach**, from the Greek **amphi**, *on each side*, and **brachys, short**, and is so called because it has a **short syllable on each side of a long one**.

The **Iambus, Trochee, and Anapæst** are the feet chiefly used in English versification. There are different sorts of **Iambic verse**, depending of course upon the **number of feet** employed.

Iambic Measure may consist of **one foot**—**one foot**, with an **additional short syllable**; **two feet**—**two feet**, with an **additional short syllable**; **three feet**—**three feet**, with an **additional short syllable**; **four feet**; **five feet**; **six feet**; **seven feet**; **eight feet**.

Note.—The **Iambic Measure** consisting of **five feet** is called the **heroic measure**. Other kinds of feet are often mixed with this measure. The **six feet measure** is also called the **Alexandrine**.

The **Trochaic Measure** is of **different kinds**, and it may consist of **one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, or eight feet**, **seven** of which may have an **additional syllable**.

There are **several kinds of Anapæstic verses**. They may consist of **one foot**; **two feet**; **two feet**, with an **additional short syllable**; **three feet**; **four feet**; **four feet**, with an **additional syllable**.

In English Versification a line that consists of **one foot** is called **Monometer**. A line consisting of **two feet** is called **Dimeter**; while **Trimeter, Tetrameter, Pentameter, Hexameter, Heptameter, and Octometer** signify respectively **three, four, five, six, seven, and eight feet**.

Note.—When a line terminates with an **incomplete foot**, it is called **catalectic**, and when a line has a syllable too many it is designated **hypermetrical**.

A **complete** verse is called **acatalectic**.

Stanza consists of a number of lines or verses adjusted to each other. A stanza of **four** lines, or verses rhyming alternately, is called a **Quatrain**. A stanza of **six** lines is designated a **Senary**. A stanza of **seven** lines of heroics is denominated **Rhyme Royal**. A stanza of **six** heroics, succeeded by an heroic couplet, is **Ottava Rima**. A **Spenserian Stanza** consists of **nine** lines, **eight** of which must be **heroic**, and the **last** an **Alexandrine**. A stanza of **fourteen** lines is called a **Sonnet**.

Note.—In poetry a **single line** is often called a **verse**. **Two** lines of verse rhyming with each other are called a **couplet**. **Three** lines rhyming together are designated a **triplet**.

Three things are **essential** to the formation of what constitutes a **perfect rhyme**:—

- 1.—The sound of the vowel, and the parts following it must be the same.
 - 2.—The parts going before the vowel must be different.
 - 3.—The rhyming syllables must be accented alike.
-

PUNCTUATION.

Punctuation teaches us where to insert **Points** in written composition, in order to make the meaning and construction clear. It is called punctuation, from the Latin word **punctum**, *a point*.

A Comma	is marked thus	(,)
A Semicolon	„	(;)
A Colon	„	(:)
A Period or Full Stop		(.)

THE USE OF THE COMMA.

A sentence which has but one subject, or nominative, or one finite verb, is called a simple sentence, and does not admit of a pause : as, *Mary loves truth*.

Here, *Mary* is the subject, or nominative case, to the verb *loves*, and *truth* the objective case, after the verb *loves*. Any words coming between the **nominative** and the **verb** which it governs are of the nature of a parenthesis, and should be separated by commas : as, *How many parents, even in the highest order in life, can bear woful testimony to the total perversion of youth !*

Note 1.—In the foregoing **example** it will be noticed that the word *parents* is the **subject** or **nominative** to the verb **can bear**, and that the words which intervene, namely, “even in the highest order in life,” are kept separate by having a comma before and after them.

Note 2.—The same rule should be observed when words come between the verb and the objective case which it governs.

In **every sentence** there may be as **many distinctions or stops** as there are nominative cases or finite

verbs expressed or understood : as, *My mother, brothers, sisters, children, all respect thee.* The same rule holds good when either the **nominative** or subject of the verb is qualified by several adjectives, or when the **verb** is modified by adverbs : as, *A good, wise, virtuous man is respected. He studies diligently, constantly, and methodically.*

The first of these sentences is equal to—*My mother respects thee, my sisters respect thee, my children respect thee.* The second to—*A good man is respected, a wise man is respected, a virtuous man is respected.* The third to—*He studies diligently, he studies constantly, and he studies methodically.*

If, however, a conjunction comes between the subjects or qualifying words, then the comma must be omitted : as, *A wise and good man.* Words in apposition must be separated by a comma : as, *John, King of England, is now dead.* Also, words in the vocative case : as, *Sir, I hope you are well ; James, allow me to accompany you.*

Note 1.—In the **first** of the three preceding **examples** the learner will observe that the conjunction **and** is inserted between the qualifying words **wise** and **good**, and consequently the comma is omitted.

Note 2.—In the **second example** the words, *King of England*, are placed in **apposition** with *John*, or are explanatory of the *John* we mean, and on that account they are **preceded** and **followed** by a **comma**.

Note 3.—In the **third** and **fourth examples** the words *Sir* and *James* are in the **vocative case**, that is, they are *spoken to*, and therefore correct punctuation requires that each *should be succeeded* by a **comma**.

THE SEMICOLON, COLON, AND PERIOD.

A **Semicolon** is used instead of a comma when the members of the sentence are not so closely connected with each other : as, *The charge of poisoning now only remains to be discussed ; of which I can see no foundation.*

When any member of a sentence makes complete sense, and is followed by another member which arises from it, but which is not connected with it in construction, a **Colon** should be used : as, *The Augustan Age was so eminent for good poets, that they have served as models to all others : yet it did not produce any good tragic poets.*

A sentence being complete in sense and construction must be marked with a **Period** : as, *Eternity is endless duration.*

All abbreviations have a period after them : as, **B.B.**, **A.C.**, and **M.P.**

Exclamation (!) is used to mark an emotion of the mind : as, *Oh ! how pretty. Ah ! how sad.*

Interrogation (?) is placed after a question : as, *How many sons had David ?*

Hyphen (-) is used to connect compound words : as, *Doomsday-Book.* It is also used at the end of a line to connect one part of a word with the other part beginning the next line.

Parenthesis () is used to enclose a remark or

sentence in a sentence : as, *John (when he had finished his business) returned to London.*

Apostrophe (') is used when a letter is omitted : as, *Belov'd* for *beloved*.

Caret (^) shows a word is omitted or interlined.

Section (§) serves to mark the **division** of a chapter.

Paragraph (¶) denotes the **beginning** of a **new subject**.

Quotation (“ ”) is used when the words of another are quoted.

Index or hand (☞) points to something of importance.

Asterisk (*)—Obelisk (†)—Double Dagger (‡)—and Parallels (||) refer to some note on the **margin**, or at the bottom of the page.

Dash (—) denotes a **break** or **stop** in the sentence. It is also used for a mark of **abruptness**, or sudden turn in the sentiment, and a **pause** of more or less significance : as, “ *It is the firm decree of Heaven—eternal and unchangeable as Jehovah himself—that misery must ever attend on guilt.* ”

Brackets [] or **Crotchets { }** are used to enclose one or more words, to correct an error, or to supply some deficiency.

Ellipsis (—) is used when some letters have been omitted : as, *M—n* for *man*.

Breve (ˇ) or short mark, is placed over a vowel or syllable, and denotes that it must have a short pronunciation : as, *Tăp* ; while the **dash** (-) signifies that the syllable over which it is put should have long pronunciation : as, *Tōne*.

Brace ({) serves for the purpose of connecting words which have a common term, or three lines in poetry, having the **same rhyme**, called a triplet.

Diaëresis (¨) placed over a diphthong shows that it must be pronounced in **two syllables** : as, *Äërometer*.

(* * *) **Several Asterisks** coming together signify that some letters have been omitted in an immodest expression ; or, the abbreviation of an extract.

Acute Accent (') denotes a **short** syllable, and the **grave accent** (`) a **long** one.

EXPLANATION OF RHETORICAL FIGURES.

Apostrophe literally means *a turning away*, and denotes a turning from the main subject of a discourse to address the absent or dead as if they were present : as, "*Then shall be brought to pass the saying*

that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. O Death ! where is thy sting ?"

Note.—**Apostrophe** is also used to denote the **contraction** of a word by the **omission** of a letter or letters, and this omission, as already explained, is marked by a comma : as, *Call'd*, for *called*. The **comma** used for this purpose is also designated an **apostrophe**.

Antithesis, *a placing against*, denotes a contrast of thoughts or words, or signifies opposition : as, "The prodigal robs his heir ; the miser robs himself."

Climax, *a scale or ladder*, is the arranging of the particulars of a part of discourse so that it may rise step by step, like a ladder, till the period is finished : as, "When we have practised good actions a while, they become easy ; and when they are easy, we begin to take pleasure in them ; and when they please us, we do them frequently ; and by frequency of acts, they grow into a habit."

Anti-climax, *the opposite of climax*, is a sentence in which the ideas become less important and striking at the close : as, "Next comes Dalhousie, the great god of war, Lieutenant-Colonel to the Earl of Mar."

Allegory is a figure by which one thing is described under the image of another. We give the following example of an allegory from Virgil : *Claudite jam rivos, pueri, sat prata biberunt*. "Stop the currents, young men, the meadows have drunk sufficiently ;" that is, *Let your music discontinue, our ears have been sufficiently delighted*. We have a fine example of an allegory in the eightieth Psalm, in which the chosen people of God are represented as a vineyard.

Metaphor is a figure by which the sense of one object is transferred to another : as, That man is a *lion*.

Simile is used when we wish to illustrate anything by comparison : as, That man is *like a lion*. A simile is always employed with **like** or **as**.

Hyperbole exceeds the bounds of truth, and represents things as greater or less than they really are : as, *He is swifter than the eagle*.

Irony is a mode of speech expressing a sense contrary to that intended to be conveyed by the speaker : as, *Nero was a very virtuous prince*.

Metonymy is a figure by which one word is substituted for another : as—

- 1.—The **cause** for the **effect**.
- 2.—The **effect** for the **cause**.
- 3.—The **sign** for the thing **signified**.
- 4.—The **container** for the **contained** :

as, The *kettle* boils, that is, the *water* in the kettle.
“They have *Moses* and the prophets,” that is, their *writings*.

Prosopopœia.—By means of this figure things are represented as persons, or a deceased person is represented as alive and present : as, “O ye frost and cold, bless ye the Lord.”

Synecdoche serves to express a part as the whole or the whole as a part : as, The number of *heads* exceeded fifty, that is, the number of persons.

Vision.—This figure is employed in animated composition, in which we use the present tense to express something that is past. In his oration against Cataline, Cicero thus represents the execution of the conspiracy :—“*I see before me the slaughtered heaps of citizens, lying unburied in the midst of their ruined country. The furious countenance of Cethegus rises to my view, while, with savage joy, he is triumphing in your miseries.*”

Note 1.—The word **allegory** is derived from two Greek words, namely, **allos**, *other*, and **agoreuō**, *I speak* ; **Antithesis**, from the Greek **anti**, *against*, and **tithemi**, *I place* ; **Apostrophe**, from the Greek **apo**, *from*, and **strophe**, *a turning* ; **Climax**, from the Greek **klimax**, *a ladder or staircase* ; **Anticlimax**, from **anti**, *against*, and **climax** ; **Hyperbole**, from the Greek **hyper**, *beyond*, and **ballō**, *I throw* ; **Metonymy**, from the Greek **meta**, *beyond*, or *expressive of change*, and **onoma**, *a name* ; **Irony**, from the Greek **eirōneia**, *dissimulation* ; **Metaphor**, from the Greek **meta**, *over*, and **pherō**, *I carry* ; **Prosopopœia**, from the Greek **prosōpon**, *a person*, and **poieō**, *I make* ; **Synecdoche**, from the Greek **syn**, *together*, and **ekdechomai**, *I receive* ; **Simile** is from the Latin **similis**, *like* ; **Vision**, from the Latin **video**, *I see*.

Note 2.—The four following figures, namely, **Pleonasm**, **Hyperbaton**, **Enallage**, and **Zeugma**, belong to **Syntax**. The word **pleonasm** is derived from the Greek **pleiōn**, *more*, and **pleos**, *full*, and denotes a redundancy of language ; **Hyperbaton**, from the Greek **hyper**, *beyond*, and **hainō**, *I go*, is a figure by which words are transposed from their natural order : as, *The truth I tell you*. **Enallage**, from the Greek **enallagē**, *change*, is a figure by which one word is substituted for another : as, *Exercitus victor*, for *victorious* ; **Zeugma**, a Greek word, meaning *a joining*, is a figure by which a verb or an adjective, agreeing with a nearer word, is referred to another more remote : as, “*Hic illius arma, hic currus fuit.*” In this quotation from Virgil, the verb *fuit* agrees with *currus* ; but it is also referred to *arma*.

WORDS and PHRASES from the LATIN LANGUAGE.

- | | |
|---|--|
| Ab extra , from without. | Ad rem , to the purpose. |
| Ab initio , from the beginning. | Ad unum omnes , all to a man. |
| Ab origine , from the origin ; from the first. | Ad valorem , according to the value. |
| Ab ovo , from the egg ; from the beginning. | Ad vitam aut culpam , for life or fault. |
| Abst invidia , all envy apart. | Ægis , a shield. |
| Ab urbe condita , from the building of the city. | Æquo animo , with an equable mind. |
| Ac etiam , and also. | Ætatis sue , of his or her age. |
| Accessit , he came near. | A fortiori , with stronger reason. |
| Ad Calendas Græcas , at the Greek Calends. These three Latin words signify <i>never</i> ; because the Greeks had no Calends. | Agenda , things to be done. |
| A cruce salus , salvation from the cross. | Alere flammam , to feed the flame. |
| Ad captandum vulgus , to catch the vulgar. | Alias , otherwise. |
| Ad absurdum , showing the absurdity of a contrary opinion. | Alma mater , a benign mother ; a university. |
| Ad extremum , to the extreme. | Alter ego , another self. |
| Ad finem , to the end. | Alter idem , another exactly like. |
| Ad infinitum , to infinity ; without end. | Alternis horis , every other hour. |
| Ad interim , in the meantime. | A mensa et thoro , from bed and board. |
| Ad libitum , at pleasure. | Amicus humani generis , a friend of the human race. |
| Ad litem , at law. | Amor patriæ , the love of our country. |
| Ad nauseam , to disgust. | Anglicè , in English. |
| Ad quod damnum , to what damage. | Anguis latet in herbâ , a snake lurks in the grass. |
| Ad referendum , to be further considered. | Anno Christi , in the year of Christ. |
| | Animo furandi , with the intention of stealing. |

- Anno Domini**, in the year of our Lord.
- Anno mundi**, in the year of the world.
- Anno urbis conditæ**, in the year the city was built.
- Annus mirabilis**, a year of wonders.
- Ante meridiem**, before noon.
- A posteriori**, from the effect to the cause.
- A priori**, from the cause to the effect.
- Aqua fortis**, literally strong water, nitric acid.
- Aqua vitæ**, water of life ; brandy.
- Arcanum**, a secret ; **Arcana imperii**, state secrets.
- Ardentia verba**, glowing words.
- Argumentum ad hominem**, an argument which has a personal application.
- Argumentum ad ignorantiam**, argument based upon an adversary's ignorance of facts.
- Argumentum ad invidiam**, argument appealing to the lower passions.
- Argumentum ad iudicium**, argument appealing to the judgment.
- Argumentum baculinum**, the argument of the stick ; an appeal to force.
- Ars est celare artem**, true art is to conceal art.
- Ars longa, vita brevis**, art is long, life short.
- Artium Magister**, Master of Arts.
- Audentes fortuna juvat**, fortune assists the brave.
- Audi alteram partem**, hear the other side.
- Audita querela**, the complaint being heard.
- Aut Cæsar aut nullus**, either Cæsar or nobody.
- Aurea mediocritas**, the golden mean.
- Auri sacra fames**, the accursed thirst of gold.
- A vinculo matrimonii**, from the chain of matrimony.
- Bis**, twice.
- Bona fide**, in good faith.
- Brutum fulmen**, a harmless thunderbolt.
- Cacoëthes carpendi**, a rage for collecting.
- Cacoëthes loquendi**, a rage for speaking.
- Cacoëthes scribendi**, an itch for writing.
- Cadet questio**, the question falls or drops.
- Cæteris paribus**, other things being equal.
- Capias**, a law term—you may have it.
- Caput**, head ; chapter.
- Caput mortuum**, the worthless remains.
- Carpe diem**, seize the opportunity ; enjoy the present day.
- Casus belli**, that which involves war.
- Cedant arma togæ**, let arms yield to the gown : that is, let military authority give way to the civil power.
- Cede Deo**, yield to God, or Providence.

- Centum**, a hundred.
- Certum pete finem**, aim at a sure end.
- Commune bonum**, a common good.
- Communia proprie dicere**, to express ordinary things with propriety.
- Communibus annis**, one year with another.
- Compos mentis**, a man of sound and composed mind.
- Concordia discors**, a jarring discord.
- Contra bonos mores**, against good manners.
- Cox unum, via una**, one heart, one way.
- Cras credemus, hodie nihil**, to-morrow we will believe, but nothing to-day.
- Credula res est amor**, love is credulous.
- Cui bono**, to what good will it lead?
- Cui malo**, to what evil?
- Cum privilegio**, with privilege.
- Currente calamo**, literally, with a running pen, with great expedition.
- Custos rotulorum**, the keeper of the rolls.
- Data**, things granted.
- Data fata secutus**, following his declared fate.
- Deceptio visus**, a visual illusion.
- De facto**, from the fact; really.
- Dei gratiâ**, by the grace of God.
- De jure**, from the law; by right.
- Delenda est Carthago**, Carthage must be destroyed.
- De mortuis nil nisi bonum**, say nothing but good of the dead.
- De novo**, anew.
- Deo gratias**, thanks to God.
- Deo volente**, God willing.
- Deo juvante**, with God's assistance.
- Deo favente**, with God's favour.
- Deo non fortuna**, from God, not fortune.
- De profundis**, out of the depths.
- Desipere in loco**, to jest at the proper time.
- Dies iræ**, day of wrath.
- Dies non**, a day on which judges do not sit.
- Dii penates**, household gods.
- Dominus providebit**, the Lord will provide.
- Dramatis personæ**, characters in a drama.
- Ducit amor patriæ**, the love of my country leads me.
- Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori**, it is sweet and glorious to die for one's country.
- Dum spiro, spero**, while I breathe, I hope.
- Dum vivimas, vivamus**, while we live, let us live.
- Duos qui sequitur lepores neutrum capit**, he who follows two hares is sure to catch neither.
- Durante bene placito**, during good pleasure.

- Ecce homo**, behold the man.
- Ego et rex meus**, I and my king.
- Emeritus**, one who has retired from active official duties.
- Eo instante**, at that instant.
- Eo nomine**, by that name.
- Errare est humanum**, to err is human.
- Erratum**, plural **errata**, an error.
- Et cætera**, and the rest; &c.
- Et hoc genus omne**, and every thing of the sort.
- Et sequentes**, and those that follow.
- Et sequentia**, and what follows.
- Et sic de cæteris**, and so of the rest.
- Et tu, Brute**, and thou also, Brutus.
- Ex capite**, from the head; from memory.
- Ex cathedrâ**, from the chair; with authority.
- Excelsior**, higher.
- Exceptio probat regulam**, the exception proves the rule.
- Excerpta**, extracts.
- Ex curia**, out of court.
- Ex dono**, by the gift.
- Exempli gratiâ**, for the sake of example.
- Exequatur**, the writing by which a person is recognised as consul, &c.
- Exeunt**, they go out.
- Exeunt omnes**, all retire.
- Exit**, he goes out; death.
- Ex officio**, by virtue of his office.
- Ex parte**, on one side only.
- Experto crede**, trust one that has had experience.
- Extra muros**, beyond the walls.
- Facetie**, humorous writings; jokes.
- Facile princeps**, decidedly the chief.
- Facilis est descensus Averno**, descent to Avernus, or hell, is easy.
- Fata obstant**, the Fates oppose it.
- Fecit**, he made or executed it.
- Feliciter**, happily.
- Felo de se**, a suicide.
- Fiat justitia, ruat cælum**, let justice be done, though the heavens should fall.
- Fidei defensor**, defender of the faith.
- Fides Punica**, Punic faith; treachery.
- Fidus Achates**, faithful Achates; that is, a true friend.
- Finem respice**, look to the end.
- Finis**, the end.
- Fortiter in re**, firmness in action.
- Fuit Ilium**, Troy has been.
- Furor loquendi**, a rage for speaking.
- Furor poeticus**, poetic fire.
- Furor scribendi**, a rage for writing.
- Gallicè**, in French.
- Genius loci**, the genius of the place.

Gloria in excelsis , glory to God in the highest.	In memoriam , to the memory of.
Gloria Patri , glory be to the Father.	In nubibus , in the clouds.
Gradus ad Parnassum , a step to Parnassus, assistance in the writing of Latin and Greek verse.	In pace , in peace.
Hic et ubique , here and everywhere.	In posse , in possible existence.
Hic jacet , here lies.	In propria personâ , in person.
Hic labor, hoc opus est , this is labour, this is work.	In puris naturalibus , completely naked.
Hic sepultus , here buried.	In re , in the matter of.
Hinc illæ lacrimæ , hence proceed these tears.	In situ , in its former situation.
Honorarium , the fee paid to a professional man.	In statu quo , in its former state.
Hortus siccus , a collection of dried plants.	Inter alia , among other things.
Ibidem , in the same place.	Inter nos , between ourselves.
Id est , that is.	Inter pocula , at one's cups.
Imprimatur , license to print a book registered on its title-page; the imprint.	In terrorem , as a warning.
In articulo mortis , at the point of death.	Inter se , among ourselves.
Index expurgatorius , a list of books forbidden to be perused.	In toto , altogether, entirely.
In extenso , at full length.	Intra muros , within the walls.
In esse , in existence.	In transitu , on the passage.
In extremis , at the point of death.	Invitâ Minervâ , without genius.
In formâ pauperis , as a pauper or poor man.	Ipsæ dixit , he himself said it; dogmatism.
Infra dignitatem , below one's dignity.	Ipsissima verba , the very words.
In limine , at the threshold.	Ipsæ factæ , in the fact itself.
In loco parentis , in the place of a parent.	Jure divino , by divine law.
In medias res , in the midst of matters.	Jure humano , by human law.
	Labore et honore , by labour and honour.
	Lapsus calami , a slip of the pen.
	Lapsus linguæ , a slip of the tongue.
	Lapsus memoriæ , a slip of the memory.
	Lares et penates , household gods.
	Laus Deo , praise to God.

Lex non scripta , the common law.	More majorum , after the manner of our ancestors.
Lex scripta , statute law.	More suo , in his own way.
Lex talionis , the law of retaliation.	Multum in parvo , much in little.
Locum tenens , a substitute.	Mutatis mutandis , with requisite changes.
Locus standi , a place for standing; a right to interfere.	Nemine contradicente , without opposition.
Lusus naturæ , a freak of nature.	Nemine dissidente , no one dissenting.
Magnum bonum , a great good.	Nemo me impune lacessit , no one wounds me with impunity.
Magnum opus , a great work.	Ne plus ultra , nothing further; the utmost point.
Mala fide , with bad faith; treacherously.	Ne sutor ultra crepidam , let not the shoemaker go beyond his last.
Mandamus , we command; a writ issued by the Court of Queen's Bench.	Nihil ad rem , nothing to the point.
Materfamilias , the mother of a family.	Nil desperandum , never despair.
Memento mori , remember death.	Nisi Dominus frustra , unless God be with you, all your toil is vain.
Memorabilia , things to be remembered.	Nisi prius , unless previously.
Mens sana in corpore sano , a sound mind in a sound body.	Nitor in adversum , I strive in opposition.
Mens sibi conscia recti , a mind conscious of rectitude.	Nolens volens , whether he will or not.
Meum et tuum , mine and thine.	Noli me tangere , don't touch me.
Minutiae , trifles.	Nolle prosequi , to be unwilling to proceed.
Mirabile dictu , wonderful to be related.	Nolo episcopari , I am unwilling to be made a bishop.
Mirabile visu , wonderful to be seen.	Non compos mentis , not in sound mind.
Mirabilia , wonders.	Non multa, sed multum , not many things, but much.
Mittimus , we send; a writ to commit an offender to prison.	Non sequitur , it does not follow.
Modus , manner, mode.	
Modus operandi , manner of operation.	

Nosce teipsum, know thyself.

Nota bene, mark well.

Novus homo, a new man ;
one who has raised himself
from obscurity.

Oblit, he, or she, died.

Odi profanum, I dislike the
profane.

Onus probandi, the onus of
proving.

Optimates, of the first rank.

Ora pro nobis, pray for us.

Ore rotundo, with full voice.

O ! si sic omnia, O that he
had always acted thus.

O tempora ! O mores ! O
the times ! O the manners !

Otium cum dignitate, digni-
fied leisure.

Palmam qui meruit ferat,
let him who has won it bear
the palm.

Pari passu, with equal pace ;
together.

Passim, everywhere.

Paterfamilias, the father of a
family.

Pater noster, our Father ;
the Lord's prayer.

Peccavi, I have sinned.

Penetralia, secret recesses.

Per annum, by the year.

Per centum, by the hundred.

Per contra, contrariwise.

Per diem, by the day.

Per saltum, by a leap.

Per se, by himself, or by itself,
&c.

Petitio principii, a begging
of the question.

Pinxit, painted it.

Plebs, common people.

Pleno jure, with full authority.

Poeta nascitur, non fit, the
poet is born, not made.

Pons asinorum, an ass's
bridge.

Posse comitatus, the power
of the county.

Post mortem, after death.

Prescriptum, a thing pre-
scribed.

Primâ facie, on the first view.

Primo, in the first place.

Primum mobile, the main
spring.

Pro aris et focis, for our
altars and firesides.

Pro bono publico, for the
public good.

Profanum vulgus, the pro-
fane vulgar.

Pro formâ, for the sake of
form.

Proh pudor ! O, for shame !

Pro memoria, for a memorial.

Pro patriâ, for our country.

Pro ratâ, in proportion.

Pro re natâ, for a special
emergency ; according to
the circumstances.

Pro tempore, for the time
being.

Quantum, the quantity or
amount.

Quantum sufficit, a sufficient
quantity.

Quasi, as if ; in a manner.

Quid nunc ? what now ? a
news monger.

Quid pro quo, one thing for
another.

- Quid rides?** why do you laugh?
- Quod erat demonstrandum,** which was to be proved.
- Quod erat faciendum,** which was to be done.
- Quod vide,** which see.
- Rara avis,** a rare bird; a prodigy.
- Reductio ad absurdum,** a reducing a position to an absurdity.
- Requiescat in pace,** may he rest in peace.
- Regium donum,** a royal gift.
- Res angusta domi,** narrow circumstances at home; poverty.
- Res gestæ,** exploits.
- Rem acu tetigisti,** you have touched the thing with a needle—that is, exactly.
- Respice finem,** look to the end.
- Resurgam,** I shall rise again.
- Ruat cælum,** let the heavens fall.
- Rus in urbe,** the country in town.
- Sanctum sanctorum,** the holy of holies.
- Sartor resartus,** the cobbler mended.
- Satis verborum,** enough of words.
- Secundum artem,** according to rule.
- Secundum naturam,** according to nature.
- Secundum ordinem,** in order.
- Semper idem,** always the same.
- Semper paratus,** always ready.
- Seriatim,** in a series.
- Sic itur ad astra,** such is the way to immortality.
- Sic passim,** so everywhere.
- Sic transit gloria mundi,** so passes away earthly glory.
- Similia similibus curantur,** like things are cured by like.
- Sine die,** without a day appointed.
- Sine qua non,** an indispensable condition.
- Siste, viator,** stop, traveller.
- Spero meliora,** I hope for better things.
- Spolia opima,** the richest booty.
- Sponte suâ,** of one's own accord.
- Status quo,** the state in which.
- Stet,** let it stand.
- Suaviter in modo, fortiter in re,** gentle in manners, but determined in action.
- Sub judice,** under consideration.
- Sub rosa,** under the rose, privately.
- Sui generis,** of its own kind.
- Summum bonum,** the chief good.
- Suum cuique,** let each have his own.
- Tabula rasa,** a blank or smooth table.
- Te Deum,** a hymn of thanksgiving.
- Tempora mutantur, et nos mutamur in illis,** the times are changed, and we with them.

Tempus fugit , time flies.	Verbatim et literatim , word for word, and letter for letter.
Terra firma , solid earth, a safe footing.	Versus , against; toward.
Terra incognita , an unknown country.	Vestigia , tracks; vestiges.
Tertium quid , a third something. [hood.	Vexata questio , a disputed question.
Toga virilis , the gown of manhood.	Via , by way of.
Toties quoties , as often as.	Via media , a middle course.
Toto cælo , by the whole heavens.	Vice , in the place of.
Tu quoque, Brute! and thou too, Brutus.	Vice versâ , the terms being exchanged.
Ultima Thule , the utmost limit.	Videlicet , to wit; namely.
Ultimatum , the last or only condition. [gust.	Vi et armis , by force and arms; by main force.
Usque ad nauseam , to disuse.	Vis inertie , the power of inertia; resistance.
Usus loquendi , usage in speaking.	Vivat regina , long live the queen.
Ut infra , as below.	Vivat rex , long live the king.
Ut supra , as above.	Vivâ voce , by the living voice; by oral testimony.
Vade mecum , go with me; a constant companion.	Vox, et præterea nihil , a voice, and nothing more.
Vale , farewell.	Vox populi, vox Dei , the voice of the people is the voice of God.
Variorum notæ , the notes of various authors.	Vulgò , commonly.
Veni, vidi, vici , I came, I saw, I conquered.	

WORDS and PHRASES from FOREIGN LANGUAGES.

FRENCH.

Abbé , the title of a clergyman.	Affaire d'honneur , an affair of honour.
Abrégé , abridgment.	Affaire du cœur , an affair of the heart.
A compte , on account.	Agrément , embellishment; agreeable quality.
A discrétion , at discretion.	
Affaire d'amour , a love affair.	

A la Française, after the French mode.
A la mode, according to custom.
A la Tartuffe, like Tartuffe; hypocritically.
Allez vous en, away with you.
Allons, let us go; come on.
Amende honorable, reparation; apology.
Amour propre, self-love; vanity.
Aperçu, survey; sketch.
A point, to a point; exactly right.
A propos, to the point.
Arrière pensée, a mental reservation.
Au fait, expert; well acquainted with.
Au fond, at the bottom.
Au pis aller, at the worst.
Au reste, as for the rest.
Au revoir, adieu till we meet again.
Aux armes, to arms.
Avant-coureur, a forerunner.
Avant propos, a preface.
Avec permission, by consent.
A votre santé, to your health.
Bel esprit, a brilliant mind; a man of wit or genius.
Biasé, surfeited.
Bon ami, good friend.
Bonbon, a sweetmeat.
Bon gré, mal gré, willing or unwilling.
Bonhomie, good-natured simplicity.
Bon jour, good-morning; good-day.

Bonne, a nurse or governess.
Bonne foi, good faith.
Bon soir, good-evening.
Breveté, patented.
Café, a coffee-house.
Canaille, the rabble.
Cap-à-pie, from head to foot.
Catalogue raisonné, a catalogue of books arranged according to their subjects.
Ce n'est, que le premier pas qui coûte, it is only the first step that is difficult.
C'est à dire, that is to say.
Chacun à son goût, every one to his taste.
Chanson, a song.
Chef, the head; the leading part or person.
Chef de cuisine, head cook.
Chef-d'œuvre, a master-piece.
Chère amie, a dear friend; a mistress.
Chevalier d'industrie, a knight of industry; one that lives by persistent fraud.
Ci devant, former; formerly.
Comme il faut, as it ought to be.
Compagnon de voyage, a travelling companion.
Comte, count; **Comtesse**, countess.
Confrère, a brother belonging to the same monastery; an associate.
Congé d'élire, leave to elect.
Conseil d'état, a council of state; a privy-council.

- Gordon sanitaire**, a line of troops to prevent the spread of pestilence or contagion.
- Corps diplomatique**, a diplomatic body.
- Couleur de rose**, rose colour.
- Coup d'état**, a stroke of policy; a vigorous and decisive measure of State in public matters.
- Coup de grâce**, the finishing stroke.
- Coup de main**, a sudden effort.
- Coup de soleil**, a stroke of the sun.
- Coup d'œil**, a rapid glance of the eye.
- Coupé**, the front division of a diligence.
- Coupon**, an interest certificate attached to transferable bonds.
- Coûte qu'il coûte**, let it cost what it may.
- Cuisine**, kitchen.
- Cul de sac**, the bottom of the bag; a street that has no outlet.
- De bonne grâce**, with good grace; willingly.
- Dégagé**, unconstrained.
- Déjeuner**, breakfast, or fashionable luncheon.
- Déjeuner à la fourchette**, a meat breakfast.
- Dernier ressort**, last resource.
- Desagrément**, something disagreeable.
- De trop**, too much, too many.
- Dieu et mon droit**, God and my right.
- Distingué**, eminent.
- Distrain**, absent in thought.
- Divertissement**, amusement.
- Double entendre**, **Double entente**, a word or phrase capable of more than one meaning.
- Douceur**, sweetness; a reward.
- Eau de Cologne**, Cologne water; a perfume.
- Eau de vie**, water of life; brandy.
- Elève**, a pupil.
- Eloge**, a funeral oration.
- Emeute**, insurrection; uproar.
- Emigré**, an emigrant.
- Empressement**, zeal; interest.
- En avant!** forward!
- Enbonpoint**, plump; in good condition.
- En déshabillé**, in undress.
- En famille**, in a domestic state.
- Enfans perdus**, lost children; the forlorn hope.
- En masse**, in a body.
- En passant**, in passing; by the way.
- En règle**, in order; according to rules.
- En route**, on the way.
- En suite**, in company.
- Entente cordiale**, evidences of good-will, exchanged by the chief persons of two States.
- Entourage**, surroundings.
- En tout**, wholly.
- Entrée**, entry; a course of dishes.

- Entremets**, dainty dishes set between the principal ones at table.
- Entre nous**, between ourselves.
- Entrepôt**, a warehouse or magazine.
- En vérité**, in truth ; verily.
- Esprit de corps**, the animating spirit of a collective body, as of the army or bar ; valour.
- Etats Généraux**, the States-General.
- Exposé**, a showing up ; an exposition.
- Fait accompli**, a thing done.
- Faux pas**, a false step ; a mistake.
- Femme de chambre**, a chambermaid.
- Fête champêtre**, a rural festival.
- Feu de joie**, a firing of guns in token of joy.
- Feuilleton**, a small leaf ; a supplement to a newspaper.
- Fille de chambre**, a chambermaid.
- Fils**, a son.
- Gallicè**, in French.
- Garçon**, a waiter.
- Gardez**, take care ; be on your guard.
- Gens d'armes**, armed police.
- Gentilhomme**, a gentleman.
- Gouvernante**, a governess.
- Hauteur**, haughtiness.
- Historiette**, a tale ; a short history.
- Honi soit qui mal y pense**, evil to him that evil thinks.
- Hors de combat**, out of condition to fight.
- Hôtel de ville**, a town hall.
- Immortelle**, the flower called everlasting.
- Je ne sais quoi**, I know not what.
- Jet d'eau**, a jet of water.
- Jeu de mots**, a play on words ; a pun.
- Jeu d'esprit**, a witticism.
- Juste milieu**, the golden mean.
- Laissez faire**, let alone.
- L'avenir**, the future.
- Le beau monde**, the fashionable world.
- Le pas**, precedence in rank or place.
- Lèse-majesté**, high treason.
- Le tout ensemble**, all together.
- Lettre de cachet**, a sealed letter ; a royal warrant.
- Lettre de marque**, a letter of marque.
- Ma chère**, my dear.
- Ma fois**, upon my faith.
- Maintien**, address ; deportment.
- Mal à propos**, ill-timed.
- Malgré nous**, in spite of us.
- Matériel**, material objects used in any design, especially the baggage and munitions of an army.
- Mauvais honte**, false shame.
- Mauvais sujet**, a bad subject ; a worthless fellow.
- Mélange**, a mixture.
- Mêlée**, a confused fight ; a scuffle ; a confused debate.

Mésalliance , improper association; marriage with one in the lower ranks.	Preux chevalier , a brave knight.
Messieurs , sirs, gentlemen.	Projet de loi , a legislative bill.
Mise en scène , preparation for the stage.	Qui vive? who goes there? on the alert.
Mon ami , my friend.	Raison d'état , a reason of State.
Mon cher , my dear.	Réchauffé , warmed up; stale, insipid.
Monsieur , sir, Mr.	Recherché , sought out with care; exquisite.
Morceau , a bit, a morsel.	Religieuse , a nun.
Née , born; family name.	Religieux , a monk.
N'importe , it matters not.	Renaissance , revival, as of letters or art.
Noblesse oblige , rank imposes obligation.	Rentes , funds bearing interest; stocks.
Nom de plume , an assumed title.	Ruse de guerre , a stratagem of war.
Nomme de guerre , a war name; a travelling title.	Sangfroid , cold blood.
Nonchalance , coolness, indifference.	Sans cérémonie , without ceremony.
Notre Dame , our lady.	Sans peur et sans reproche , without fear and without reproach.
Nous verrons , we shall see.	Sauve qui peut , save himself who can.
Œuvres , works.	Savant , a learned man.
On dit , they say; a flying rumour.	Soi-disant , self-styled.
Par excellence , by way of eminence.	Spirituel , intelligent, witty.
Pas , step; action; precedence.	Tableau vivant , the representation of some scene by groups of persons.
Pensée , a thought.	Tapis , the carpet.
Personnel , the person employed in any service as distinguished from the <i>matériel</i> .	Tête-à-tête , head to head; a private conversation.
Petit , small.	Tout ensemble , the whole taken together.
Petit-maitre , a fop.	Valet de chambre , an attendant.
Pis aller , the last shift.	Voilà , behold; there is or there are.
Point d'appui , point of support.	
Poste restante , remain till called for.	
Pour prendre congé , to take leave.	

ITALIAN.**Al fresco**, in the open air.**Carbonari**, members of a secret political society in Italy.**De capo**, from the beginning.**Dolce far niente**, sweet idleness.**Il penseroso**, the pensive man.**Inamorata**, a lover.**In petto**, within the breast ; in reserve.**L'allegro**, the merry man.**Lazaroni**, the poor of Naples, who live in the streets, and have no regular occupation.**Lingua Franca**, the mixed language spoken by Europeans in the East.**Non mi ricordo**, I don't remember.**Padrone**, a ruler, master, protector.**GERMAN.****Ich dien**, I serve.**GREEK.****Ariston metron**, the golden mean ; the middle course is the best.**Gnothi seauton**, know thyself.**Hoi polloi**, the many ; the vulgar.**To kalon**, the chief good ; the beautiful.**SPANISH.****El Dorado**, the golden land.**PORTUGUESE.****Auto da fé**, an act of faith—applied to the burning of Jews and heretics.

ABBREVIATIONS.

- A.B.**, Able-bodied seaman.
A.B., *Artium Baccalaureus*, Bachelor of Arts.
Abbr., or **Abbrev.**, Abbreviated, or Abbreviation.
Abp., Archbishop.
A.C., *Ante Christum*, before Christ.
Acc., or **Acct.**, Account.
A.D., *Anno Domini*, in the year of our Lord.
Adj., Adjutant.
Ad lib., or **Ad libit.**, *ad libitum*, at pleasure.
Æ., or **Æt.**, *Ætatis*, of age, aged.
A.H., *Anno Hegiræ*, in the year of the Hegira, or flight of Mahommed.
A.M., *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts.
A.M., *Ante meridiem*, before noon.
A.M., *Anno mundi*, in the year of the world.
Anon., Anonymous.
Ant., or **Antiq.**, Antiquities.
App., Appendix.
A.R., *Anno regni*, in the year of the reign.
A.R.A., Associate of the Royal Academy.
A.R.H.A., Associate of the Royal Hibernian Academy.
A.R.E., *Anno regni regis*, or *reginæ*, in the year of the king's, or queen's, reign.
A.R.S.A., Associate of the Royal Scottish Academy.
A.R.S.S., *Antiquariorum Regiæ Societatis Socius*, Fellow of the Royal Society of Antiquaries.
A.S., Anglo-Saxon.
Asst., Assistant.
A.U.C., *Anno urbis conditæ*, or *ab urbe condita*, in the year from the building of the city—Rome.
A.V., Authorised version.
b., born.
B.A., Bachelor of Arts. See **A.B.**
Bart., or **Bt.**, Baronet.
B.C., Before Christ.
B.C.L., Bachelor of Civil Law.
B.D., Bachelor of Divinity.
Beds., Bedfordshire.
Berks., Berkshire.
B.L., Bachelor of Laws.
B.L.L., *Baccalaureus Legum*, Bachelor of Laws.
B.M., *Baccalaureus Medicinæ*, Bachelor of Medicine.
Bp., Bishop.
Br., or **Bro.**, Brother.
B.S.L., Botanical Society, London.
B.V., The Blessed Virgin.
C., *Centum*, a hundred.
C., or **Cap.**, *Caput*, chapter.
C.A., Chartered Accountant.
Cam., **Camb.**, Cambridge.
Cap., *Caput*, capital, chapter.
Caps., Capitals.
Capt., Captain.

- C.B.**, Companion of the Bath.
C.E., Civil Engineer.
Cent., *Centum*, a hundred.
Cf., *Confer*, compare.
Ch., Church, Chapter.
Chap., Chapter.
Chas., Charles.
Clk., Clerk.
C.M., Certificated master.
C.M., Common metre.
C.O.D., Cash on delivery.
Col., Colonel, Column.
Colloq., Colloquially.
Com. Ver., Common version.
Con., *Contra*, against.
Con. Cr., *Contra credit*.
Contr., Contracted, Contraction.
Cor. Mem., Corresponding Member.
Cor. Sec., Corresponding Secretary.
Cr., Credit, Creditor.
Crim. con., Criminal conversation, or adultery.
C.S., Court of Session, Clerk to the Signet.
C.S.I., Companion of the Star of India.
Ct., *Centum*, a hundred.
C.T., certificated teacher.
Cur., **Curt.**, Current — this month.
Cwt., *Centum*, a hundred, and weight—a hundredweight.
Cyc., Cyclopædia.
d., Died.
d., *Denarius* or *denarii*, a penny or pence.
D.C.L., Doctor of Civil (or Canon) Law.
D.D., Doctor of Divinity.
Def., Defendant.
Deg., Degree, Degrees.
Dept., Department.
D.F., Dean of the Faculty, Defender of the Faith.
D.G., *Dei gratia*, by the grace of God.
D.L.O., Dead-letter Office.
D.M., Doctor of Music.
Do., *ditto*, the said, the same.
D.P., Doctor of Philosophy.
Dr., Debtor, Doctor, Dram.
D.V., *Deo volente*, God willing.
Dwt., *Denarius*, penny, and weight—pennyweight.
E., East.
E.C., Eastern Central.
E.C., Established Church.
Ecc., **Eccles.**, Ecclesiastical.
Ed., Editor, Edition.
Edin., Edinburgh.
E.E., Errors excepted.
e.g., *exempli gratia*, for example.
E.I., East Indies.
Emp., Emperor, Empress.
Ency., **Encyc.**, Encyclopædia.
E.N.E., East-north-east.
E.S.E., East-south-east.
Esq., **Esqr.**, Esquire.
Esqs., **Esqrs.**, Esquires.
et. al., *et alibi*, and elsewhere.
et. al., *et alii* or *alia*, and others.
etc., **&c.**, *et ceteri*, *cætera*, or *cætera*, and others, and so forth.
et seq., *et sequentes* or *sequentia*, and the following.
Ex., Example, Exception.

- E. & O. E.**, Errors and omissions excepted.
- Fahr.**, Fahrenheit.
- F.A.S.**, Fellow of the Society of Arts.
- F.B.S.E.**, Fellow of the Botanical Society of Edinburgh.
- F.C.**, Free Church of Scotland.
- Fcp.**, Foolscap.
- F.D.**, *Fidei Defensor*, Defender of the Faith.
- Fec.**, fecit, he did it.
- F.E.I.S.**, Fellow of the Educational Institute of Scotland.
- F.E.S.**, Fellow of the Entomological Society.
- F.E.S.**, Fellow of the Ethnological Society.
- F.G.S.**, Fellow of the Geological Society.
- F.H.S.**, Fellow of the Horticultural Society.
- Fig.**, Figure, Figuratively.
- F.L.S.**, Fellow of the Linnæan Society.
- F.M.**, Field-marshal.
- Fo.**, Fol., Folio.
- F.O.**, Field-officer.
- F.P.**, Fire-plug.
- F.P.S.**, Fellow of the Philological Society.
- F.R.A.S.**, Fellow of the Royal Astronomical Society.
- F.R.C.P.**, Fellow of the Royal College of Preceptors.
- F.R.C.P.E.**, Fellow of the Royal College of Physicians, Edinburgh.
- F.R.C.S.**, Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons.
- F.R.C.S.E.**, Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons, Edinburgh.
- F.R.C.S.I.**, Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons, Ireland.
- F.R.C.S.L.**, Fellow of the Royal College of Surgeons, London.
- F.R.G.S.**, Fellow of the Royal Geographical Society.
- F.R.S.**, Fellow of the Royal Society.
- F.R.S.E.**, Fellow of the Royal Society, Edinburgh.
- F.R.S.L.**, Fellow of the Royal Society of Literature.
- F.R.S.L.**, Fellow of the Royal Society, London.
- F.S.A.**, Fellow of the Society of Arts, or of Antiquaries.
- F.S.A.Scot.**, Fellow of the Society of Antiquaries of Scotland.
- F.S.S.**, Fellow of the Statistical Society.
- Ft.**, Foot, Feet, Fort.
- F.T.C.D.**, Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin.
- F.Z.S.**, Fellow of the Zoological Society.
- G.A.**, General Assembly.
- G.B.**, Great Britain.
- G.C.B.**, Grand Cross of the Bath.
- G.C.L.H.**, Grand Cross of the Legion of Honour.
- Gen.**, Genl., General.
- Gent.**, Gentleman, Gentlemen.
- G.P.O.**, General Post-Office.
- G.R.**, *Georgius Rex*, George the King.
- h.**, Hour.

Hants., Hampshire.
H.B.M., His or Her Britannic Majesty.
H.C.M., His or Her Catholic Majesty.
Hf. bd., Half-bound.
H.G., Horse Guards.
H.H., His or Her Highness.
H.H., His Holiness—the Pope.
H.I.H., His or Her Imperial Highness.
H.J.S., *Hic jacet sepultus*, here lies buried.
H.M., His or Her Majesty.
H.M.P., *Hoc monumentum posuit*, erected this monument.
H.M.S., His or Her Majesty's Ship or Service.
Hon., Honourable.
H.R.H., His or Her Royal Highness.
H.R.I.P., *Hic requiescit in pace*, here rests in peace.
H.S.H., His or Her Serene Highness.
H.S.S., *Historiæ Societatis Socius*, Fellow of the Historical Society.
Ib., **Ibid.**, **Ibidem**, in the same place.
Id., **idem**, the same.
i.e., **id est**, that is.
I.H.S., *Jesus Hominum Salvator*, Jesus the Saviour of Men.
Imp., Imperial.
Imp., *Imperator*, emperor.
Incog., **incognito**, unknown.
In lim., **in limine**, at the outset.
In loc. in loco, in its place.

Inst., **instant**, the present month.
In trans., **in transitu**, on the passage.
I.O.U., I owe you.
I.P.D., *in præsentia Dominorum*, in presence of the Lords (of Session).
i.q., *idem quod*, the same as.
J.H.S., *Jesus Hominum Salvator*, Jesus the Saviour of Men.
Jno., John.
J.P., Justice of the Peace.
Jr., Junior.
Junr., Junior.
K.B., Knight of the Bath.
K.B., King's Bench.
K.C.B., Knight Commander of the Bath.
K.G., Knight of the Garter.
K.G.C., Knight of the Grand Cross.
K.G.C.B., Knight of the Grand Cross of the Bath.
K.L.H., Knight of the Legion of Honour.
Knt., Knight.
K.P., Knight of St. Patrick.
Kt., Knight.
K.T., Knight of the Thistle.
L.A.C., Licentiate of the Apothecaries' Company.
Lat., Latitude.
lb., *libra*, a pound.
l.c., Lowercase (in printing).
l.c., *loco citato*, in the place cited.
L.C.B., Lord Chief-Baron.
L.C.J., Lord Chief-Justice.
Ld., Lord.

Lib., *Liber*, book.
Lieut., Lt., Lieutenant.
Lit., Literally.
LL.B., *Legum Baccalaureus*, Bachelor of Laws.
LL.D., *Legum Doctor*, Doctor of Laws.
Lon., Long., Longitude.
Loq., *Loquitur*, speaks.
L.P., Lord Provost.
L.S., Left side.
L.S., *Locus sigilli*, place of the seal.
L.S.D., *Libra, solidi, denarii*, pounds, shillings, pence.
M., Monsieur, Mister.
M., *Mille*, a thousand.
m., Married.
M.A., Master of Arts.
Mad., *Madm.*, Madam.
Maj., Major.
Marq., Marquis.
M.B., *Medicinæ Baccalaureus*, Bachelor of Medicine.
M.B., *Musicæ Baccalaureus*, Bachelor of Music.
M.D., *Medicinæ Doctor*, Doctor of Medicine.
Mdlle., *Mademoiselle*, Miss.
M.E., Most Excellent.
Mem., Memorandum.
Mem., *Memento*, remember.
Messrs., *Messieurs*, Sirs, Gentlemen.
M.H.S., Member of the Historical Society.
Mlle., *Mademoiselle*, Miss.
MM., Their Majesties.
MM., *Messrs.*, Gentlemen or Sirs.

Mme., *Madame*, Madam.
M.N.S., Member of the Numismatical Society.
Mons., *Monsieur*, Mr. or Sir.
M.P., Member of Parliament.
M.P.S., Member of the Philological Society.
M.P.S., Member of the Pharmaceutical Society.
Mr., Master or Mister.
M.R.A.S., Member of the Royal Asiatic Society.
M.R.A.S., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences.
M.R.C.C., Member of the Royal College of Chemistry.
M.R.C.P., Member of the Royal College of Preceptors.
M.R.C.S., Member of the Royal College of Surgeons.
M.R.G.S., Member of the Royal Geographical Society.
M.R.I., Member of the Royal Institution.
M.R.I.A., Member of the Royal Irish Academy.
Mrs., Mistress.
M.R.S.L., Member of the Royal Society of Literature.
M.S., *Memoriæ sacrum*, Sacred to the memory.
MS., Manuscript.
MISS., Manuscripts.
Mt., *Mts.*, Mount, Mountains.
Mus., Music.
Mus. B., Bachelor of Music.
Mus. D., *Doc., Doct.*, Doctor of Music.
N., North.
N.B., North Britain.
N.B., *Nota bene*, note well, or take notice.

N.E., North-east.
Nem. con., *Nemine contradicente*, no one contradicting.
Nem. diss., *Nemine dissentiente*, no one dissenting.
New Test., New Testament.
N.N.E., North-north-east.
N.N.W., North-north-west.
No., *Numero*, number.
Non. con., Non-content.
Non. obst., *Non obstante*, notwithstanding.
Non. pros., *Non prosequitur*, he does not prosecute.
Non. seq., *Non sequitur*, it does not follow.
Nos., Numbers.
Notts., Nottinghamshire.
N.S., New style.
N.S.J.C., *Noster Salvator Jesus Christus*, Our Saviour Jesus Christ.
N.T., New Testament.
N.W., North-west.
Ob., *Obiit*, died.
Obdt., Obedient.
O.M., Old measurement.
O.S., Old style.
O.T., Old Testament.
Oxon., *Oxonia*, Oxford.
P., Page.
Pax., Paragraph.
Parl., Parliament.
P.B., *Philosophiæ Baccalaureus*, Bachelor of Philosophy.
P.C., Privy Counsellor.
P.C., *Patres Conscripti*, Conscript Fathers.
P.D., *Philosophiæ Doctor*, Doctor of Philosophy.

Per an., *Per annum*, per year; by the year.
Per cent., *Per centum*, by the hundred.
Ph. B., *Philosophiæ Baccalaureus*, Bachelor of Philosophy.
Ph. D., *Philosophiæ Doctor*, Doctor of Philosophy.
Phil. Trans., Philosophical Transactions.
Pinx., **Pxt.**, *Pinxit*, he or she painted.
P.M., *Post meridiem*, afternoon.
P.O., Post-office.
P.O.O., Post-office order.
Pop., Population.
pp., Pages.
P.P.C., *Pour prendre congé*, to take leave.
P.R., Prize-ring.
P.R., *Populus Romanus*, the Roman people.
P.R.A., President of the Royal Academy.
Pres., President.
Prof., Professor.
Pro. tem., *Pro tempore*, for the time being.
Prox., *Proximo*, next.
P.R.S., President of the Royal Society.
P.S., *Post scriptum*, postscript, written after.
Pub. Doc., Public document.
Q., **Qu.**, Query, Question.
Q.B., Queen's Bench.
Q.C., Queen's Counsel.
Q.d., *Quasi dicat*, as if he should say.
Q.e., *Quod est*, which is.

- Q.E.D.**, *Quod erat demonstrandum*, which was to be demonstrated.
- Q.E.F.**, *Quod erat faciendum*, which was to be done.
- Q.E.I.**, *Quod erat inveniendum*, which was to be found out.
- Q.l.**, *Quantum libet*, as much as you please.
- Qr.**, Quarter.
- Q.S.**, Quarter Sessions.
- Q.s.**, *Quantum suff.*, L. *quantum sufficit*, a sufficient quantity.
- Q.v.**, *Quod vide*, which see.
- R.**, *Rex, regina*, king, queen.
- R.**, *recipe*, take.
- R.A.**, Royal Academy, Academician, or Artillery.
- R.C.**, Roman Catholic.
- R.E.**, Royal Engineers.
- Rec.**, Recipe.
- Recd.**, Received.
- Recpt.**, Receipt.
- Ref. Ch.**, Reformed Church.
- Reg. Prof.**, Regius Professor.
- Regt.**, Regiment.
- Retd.**, Returned.
- Rev.**, **Revd.**, Reverend.
- Revs.**, Reverenda.
- R.H.A.**, Royal Horse Artillery.
- R.H.G.**, Royal Horse Guards.
- R.M.**, Royal Mail; Royal Marines.
- R.M.A.**, Royal Military Asylum.
- R.N.**, Royal Navy.
- Rom. Cath.**, Roman Catholic.
- R.S.A.**, Royal Society of Antiquaries; Royal Scottish Academy.
- R.S.D.**, Royal Society of Dublin.
- R.S.E.**, Royal Society of Edinburgh.
- R.S.L.**, Royal Society of London.
- R.S.S.**, *Regia Societatis Socius*, Fellow of the Royal Society.
- R.S.V.P.**, *Répondez, s'il vous plaît*, answer, if you please.
- Rt.**, Right.
- Rt. Hon.**, Right Honourable.
- Right Rev.**, Right Reverend.
- Rt. W.**, **Wpful.**, Right Worshipful.
- S.**, South.
- S.A.S.**, *Societatis Antiquariorum Socius*, Fellow of the Society of Antiquaries.
- S.B.**, South Britain.
- Sc.**, **Scil.**, *Scilicet*, to wit; namely; being understood.
- Sc.**, **Sculp.**, **Sculpt.**, *Sculpsit*, he or she engraved it.
- S.E.**, South-east.
- Sec.**, **Secy.**, Secretary.
- Seq.**, *Sequentes* or *sequentia*, the following.
- Serg.**, *Serjt.*; *Serj.*, *Serjt.*, Sergeant, Serjeant.
- S.H.S.**, *Societatis Historiae Socius*, Fellow of the Historical Society.
- Sic.**, Thus, or, it is so; as, *sic*, in the work quoted; or, briefly, *sic*.
- S.M.I.**, *Sa Majesté Impériale*, His or Her Imperial Majesty.
- S.M. Lond. Soc.**, *Societatis Medicæ Londiniensis Socius*, Member of the London Medical Society.
- Sol.-Gen.**, Solicitor-General.

S.P.C.K. , Society for the Promotion of Christian Knowledge.	U.K. , United Kingdom.
S.P.G. , Society for the Propagation of the Gospel.	Ult. , <i>Ultimo</i> , last.
S.P.Q.R. , <i>Senatus Populusque Romanus</i> , the Senate and People of Rome.	U.P. , United Presbyterian.
Sq. , Square.	u.s. , <i>ut supra</i> , as above.
S.R.S. , <i>Societatis Regiæ Socius</i> , Fellow of the Royal Society.	U.S. , United States.
S.S.C. , Solicitor before the Supreme Courts.	V.C. , Vice-Chancellor.
S.S.E. , South-south-east.	Ven. , Venerable.
S.S.W. , South-south-west.	v.g. , <i>verbi gratiâ</i> , for example.
St. , Saint.	Vis. , Visc. , Viscount.
S.T.P. , <i>Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor</i> , Professor of Theology.	Viz. , <i>Videlicet</i> , namely.
Surv. Gen. , Surveyor-General.	Vol. , Vols. , Volume, Volumes.
S.v. , <i>Sub verbo</i> , under the word or title.	V.R. , <i>Victoria Regina</i> , Queen Victoria.
S.W. , South-west.	W. , West.
Tal. qual. , <i>Talis qualis</i> , just as they come, average quantity.	W.C. , Western Central.
Text rec. , The received text.	W.N.W. , West-north-west.
T.O. , Turn over.	Wp. , Wd. , Worshipful.
Tom. , Tome or volume.	W.S. , Writer to the Signet.
T.T.L. , To take leave.	W.S.W. , West-south-west.
	X. , Christ.
	Xm. , Xmas. , Christmas.
	Xn. , Xtian. , Christian.
	Xt. , Christ.
	Y. , Yr. , Year.
	Ye , The, thee.
	Yr. , Your, younger.

FINIS.

Theological and Educational Works,

BY THE REV. G. BARTLE, D.D., D.C.L.,

PRINCIPAL OF FRESHFIELD COLLEGE, FORMBY-BY-THE-SEA,
LIVERPOOL.

Second Edition. Price 12/6.

JESUS OF NAZARETH NEITHER BAPTISED NOR SLAIN BY JEW OR GENTILE:

BEING A REFUTATION OF THE ERRONEOUS AND UNSCRIPTURAL
TEACHING OF PROFESSING CHRISTENDOM, AND A DEMONSTRATION
OF THE SINLESSNESS, SACRIFICE, AND DEITY OF CHRIST.

OPINIONS OF THE PRESS.

"An elaborate refutation of Anabaptist heresy."—*Morning Post*.

"The arguments advanced in this book are supported with great ability."—*The Rock*.

"Dr. Bartle does not impugn the truth of the Scriptures, but makes new claims for their acceptance."—*Liverpool and Southport Daily News*.

"The subject is thoroughly worked out by the reverend doctor, and much curious light is thrown upon various passages of Holy Scripture in the course of the elucidation. It is the production of a man who has deeply studied the Scriptures and discovered in them truths of inestimable value and of exquisite beauty."—*Liverpool Courier*.

"Good people may read Dr. Bartle's book without alarm, and with profit, as he is well versed in Scripture, is familiar with Hebrew and Greek, and argues with ingenuity. The doctor is a great sprinkler; and as he considers that any opinions he may hold are so obviously well founded that they cannot be reasonably called in question, Baptists ought to be endued with some patience to read the book with comfort. One distinction he insists upon in connection with baptism will probably be accepted—namely, that 'Regeneration, properly speaking, pertains to infants; while conversion and renewal of the Holy Ghost belong to those who have arrived at the years of discretion.' So distinguished baptism for infants may seem as reasonable as baptism for the adult, being typical of a different change. With regard to the Crucifixion, we can only refer our readers to Dr. Bartle's book. As a specimen of vigorous, unhesitating argument it is refreshing to read."—*Chester Chronicle*.

WORKS BY THE REV. GEORGE BARTLE, D.D.

Sixth Edition, extra cloth. Price 5/.

THE SCRIPTURAL DOCTRINE OF HADES:

BEING A CRITICAL EXAMINATION OF THE STATE AND ABODE
OF THE DEAD.

CONTENTS :—

The Mutual Recognition of the Departed—Their Knowledge of Mundane Affairs—Probation—Purgatory—The Descent of Christ into Hell—Preaching to the "Spirits in Prison"—Banishment of the Devils into the Bottomless Pit—The Millennium—The Resurrection of the Dead—The Casting of Death and Hell into the Lake of Fire—The General Judgment, and the Final Destiny of all Mankind; with an Exposition of some of the most Difficult Passages in the Bible, a new Translation of I. Peter iii. 19, and irrefragable Proofs that the Present World was Not the Scene of the Atonement.

"The book is altogether one of profound and thrilling interest."—*Christian Age*.

"The book is one deserving careful reading by all thoughtful Christian men."—*Derby Mercury*.

"The most remarkable work of its specific character that has ever issued from the press."—*Cheltenham Chronicle*.

"We are constrained to admire Dr. Bartle's acuteness in argument, and the extent of his erudition."—*Rock*.

"The reader who follows Dr. Bartle in his animated reasoning will find in the end that his ideas are marvellously enlarged."—*Athenæum*.

"We have read the book with wonder, and almost amazement, at the far-reaching thoughts—from the introductory chapter to the very close of the volume—the mind being held enchained by a continual and unbroken flow of profound reasoning."—*Eastern Times*.

"Dr. Bartle's arguments and illustrations are drawn from all portions of the Word of God, and they constitute an amount of Scripture testimony to the particular doctrine which he propounds, such as cannot fail to surprise even those who may not be indisposed to adopt his conclusions, but who have not hitherto looked into the subject. Moreover, he proves himself to be throughout in perfect accordance with the spirit of the teaching of the Church of England. And lest some should apprehend, as they not unnaturally may, that giving such prominence to 'Hades' is calculated to encourage the notion of purgatory, we may say that no small portion of the work is devoted to the explosion of that ridiculous fiction, and that this branch of the subject is handled in a manner no less masterly and convincing than the rest."—*Liverpool Courier*.

WORKS BY THE REV. GEORGE BARTLE, D.D.

Eleventh Edition. Price 3/6.

A COMPLETE SYNOPSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY.

FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE PRESENT TIME, ARRANGED ON A PLAN ENTIRELY NEW, COMPRISING A CONCISE YET FULL ACCOUNT OF THE WARS, LEADING EVENTS, AND PERSONS OF NOTE IN EACH REIGN; TOGETHER WITH GENEALOGICAL CHARTS, CHRONOLOGICAL TABLES, TERMS OF THE VARIOUS TREATIES, CONTEMPORARY SOVEREIGNS, BRITISH COLONIES, HISTORIC RHYMES, AND EXPLANATORY REMARKS.

Expressly designed to assist Students preparing for the Oxford and Cambridge University Local Examinations, and other competitive tests, as well as for the use of Schools, Families, Teachers, Examiners, General Readers, and all who wish to save time, trouble, and expense in acquiring an accurate knowledge of English History.

The above work, which is now used in most of the principal Educational Establishments in the United Kingdom, is considered by Teachers and competent judges to be the best Manual on the subject in the English language, and it has been highly recommended by upwards of seventy leading Journals, extracts from a few of which are subjoined.

"It is, without exception, the best Manual we have seen on the subject, and contains the greatest amount of information in the shortest space, and in the clearest style."—*Rock*.

"Dr. Bartle may consider himself a benefactor to all Students of History."—*Derby Mercury*.

"An admirable epitome of English History."—*City Press*.

"A work of superlative merit."—*Mona's Herald*.

"Indispensable to Candidates preparing for University Local Examinations."—*Educational Times*.

"For wealth of information, for accuracy of detail, for conciseness of arrangement we know of no publication at all comparable with Bartle's Synopsis."—*Homasopathio World*.

"Will be a precious boon to all who are engaged in the work of teaching. In fact no person should be without it; clever in arrangement and style, it astonishes us not a little by its redundancy of information, condensing, as it does, into one volume, a complete analysis of all that a Student can require on the subject, whether for proficiency or examination."—*St. James's Chronicle*.

WORKS BY THE

Seventy

ANALYSIS THE CHURCH

COPIOUS NOTES
IN QUESTIONS
AND CANDIDATE
VE EXAMINATION

aid, and sort. "Modox."
w of no work of c
a very large an

rate expo - position of
e's repit - ation as a
is now product of
d cor on - complete exposi

e in t the possession
Shelter ham Chronicle

s an analysis and exp
endi um of redigati
nces, explanatory in
of Ch ristian faith us
dera tely endowed p
com mon sense on hi
arne ed divine. Both
noul id feel themselves
has shown within the
m, so far from being
nula ary, contains the g
now w and believe. Re
it a assumes a character
Scri - criptural teaching w
poo ooc pool Courier.

Second Edition.

RE-STATEMENT ON

of b b d both Sexes at School;

= LONGMANS & Co.; A
may also be had direct.



WORKS BY THE REV. GEORGE BARTLE, D.D.

Seventh Edition. Price 1/6.

AN ANALYSIS AND EXPOSITION OF THE CHURCH CATECHISM.

WITH COPIOUS NOTES, BIBLICAL REFERENCES, AND 300 EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS, FAMILIES, TEACHERS, AND CANDIDATES PREPARING FOR CONFIRMATION AND COMPETITIVE EXAMINATIONS.

"Full, lucid, and orthodox."—*Illustrated Review*.

"We know of no work of equal merit."—*Derby Mercury*.

"Contains a very large amount of valuable information."—*Clerical Journal*.

"An elaborate exposition of the Catechism."—*The Rock*.

"Dr. Bartle's reputation as a Teacher will receive nothing but increased honour from this new product of his care and zeal."—*Sheffield Independent*.

"A full and complete exposition of the Catechism."—*St. James's Chronicle*.

"Ought to be in the possession of every teacher and intelligent head of a household."—*Cheltenham Chronicle*.

"Dr. Bartle's analysis and exposition of the Church Catechism is a marvellous compendium of religious truth, elucidating, as it does, by means of biblical references, explanatory notes, and examination questions, every possible point of Christian faith and practice. With this manual in his hand, a very moderately endowed parent, or Sunday-school teacher, with earnestness and common sense on his side, is on a par for the time being with the most learned divine. Both ministers and members of the Established Church should feel themselves under a deep debt of gratitude to Dr. Bartle, who has shown within the compass of these few pages that the Church Catechism, so far from being, as some persons suppose, a meagre and barren formulæ, contains the germ of everything 'that a Christian man ought to know and believe.' Read by the light of Dr. Bartle's notes and references, it assumes a character for searching comprehensiveness and fulness of Scriptural teaching which is worthy of the highest admiration."—*Liverpool Courier*.

Second Edition. Price 2/.

A TREATISE ON ARITHMETIC.

For the Use of both Sexes at School; and also for Private Tuition.

LONDON: LONGMANS & Co.; AND ALL BOOKSELLERS.
And may also be had direct from the Author.







